

A NEW  
LATIN GRAMMAR,

adapted to the Capacities

OF

Young SCHOLARS;

Comprising every Thing

In the ART,

Necessary for GRAMMAR-SCHOOLS.

With short, easy, and proper EXAMPLES

To all, and every part of, the RULES

In SYNTAX.

---

By the Rev. Mr. HENSON, *K*  
Master of the Free-School in *Nottingham*.

---

Hæc de Grammaticâ, quam brevissimè potui;  
non ut omnia dicerem, sectatus (quod infinitum erat;) sed ut maximè necessaria.

*Quintil. de Institut. Orat. Lib. 10*

---

NOTTINGHAM:

Printed for the AUTHOR, and sold by J.  
RIVINGTON, in *St. Paul's Church-yard*, LONDON;  
and G. AYS COUGH, in *Bridlesmith-  
gate*, NOTTINGHAM.

M,DCC,XLIV.





To the right Worshipful

JOHN HORNBUCKLE Esq;

MAYOR,

Thomas Trigge	}}	Thomas Langford Esq;
William Bilbie		James Huthwaite
William Trigge		John Burton

ALDERMEN,

Mr. Butler	}	Coroners.	{	Mr. Huthwaite
Mr. Egginton				Mr. Sherwin
Mr. Doddsley				Mr. Foxcroft
Mr. Truman Senior.				Mr. Wylde
Mr. Richard Smith				Mr. Finch
Mr. Robinson				Mr. Joseph Smith
Mr. Wheldon				Mr. William Bilbie
Mr. Truman Junior.				Mr. Joseph Bilbie
Mr. Fellows				Mr. Wright

COMMON COUNCIL MEN,

TRUSTEES,

and

Mr. Joseph Inglestone	}	Guardians,
Mr. Benjamin Bull		

of the Free School of NOTTINGHAM,  
This Grammar is,

with the greatest Respect, dedicated,  
by their most Obedient,  
humble Servant,

JOHN HENSON.

80 Y 59

---

---

---

# PREFACE.

**T**H O' there are a great variety of Grammars already publish'd, some in Latin and others in English, for the use of publick Schools, I have not yet had the pleasure of seeing one, that is thoroughly calculated for the purpose.

As to those, whose Rules are given in Latin, the Language intended to be taught by them, I think there needs not much Argument, to shew the Inconvenience of them. And indeed, the Method seems now to be almost universally exploded by the best and wisest Authors, not only of our own, but other Nations. For if I was to teach a Man *French* or *Italian*, *Greek* or *Hebrew*, wou'd he not think it absurd, if I shou'd put into his Hands a Grammar written in any of those Languages, he was going to learn? Wou'd it not be necessary first to explain the Rules to him in his own Tongue, before he cou'd understand the mean-

ing of them? And if they must be translated either *viva voce*, or in *writing*, before he can make use of them, why shou'd they not rather be writ at first, in the most plain and intelligible Terms, to save both Master and Scholar any further Trouble? And if a Man of Sense wou'd think this Method unreasonable for himself, it must certainly be much more so for young Boys, whose tender Years and immature Reason, stand in need of the most regular Assistance.

Of *those*, which are composed in English, some are defective in one part of Grammar, some in another. Some treat only of *Orthography* and *Etymology*, others of *Etymology* and *Syntax*, without *Orthography* and *Prosody*.

In order to supply these defects, I set myself, some Years ago, with all Care and Diligence, to collect Materials out of the best Authors, both antient and modern, and to range them in the best Method I cou'd, for the use of my own Scholars. After I had in some measure compleated this work, I put it into their Hands to be transcribed by them: But finding that Method attended with much Labour and many Blunders, I was at last prevail'd on by some Gentlemen to make it publick, that

## PREFACE

vii

that not only They, but others, might receive greater Benefit from it.

I must own I have not scrupled to take from other Grammarians, what I thought useful to my purpose; as I find they have done from more antient Authors. Nor wou'd I assume to myself any merit, for having made any new Discoveries. My only Ambition is to be thought to have taken some pains, to render those things more easy, more regular, and suitable to the Capacities of young Children, which already have been treated of by a thousand Authors.

The Definition of the Parts of Speech I have in a good measure taken from Mr. Holmes, which I think are very plain and significant. I have given several Examples to the Declensions of Nouns Substantive, with the English to them, which I found by Experience the Boys very much wanted. And as the Article *Hic, hæc, hoc*, is in the common Grammar join'd with Substantives, only to distinguish the Gender of them, I have only used it in the Nominative, which I think is sufficient for that purpose: And have added besides Examples of Adjectives and Substantives of all Endings and Genders, which I use my Boys to decline together.



I have reduced the Rules for the Gender of common Nouns to a small Number, and have given Examples to all of them : And as there are no general Rules without Exceptions, I have taken Care to set down all the Exceptions under them, with their English and the Ending of the Genitive Case. So that if any word be not according to the General Rule, it will be found among the Exceptions ; and on the contrary, if it be not among the Exceptions, a Boy may be certain, that it comes under the General Rule. Besides, the English of so many Latin Nouns will serve them as a little Vocabulary. I shou'd advise the Boys only to get the common Rules by heart, and to read frequently and consult the Exceptions upon Occasion, which will, without much trouble, soon be fix'd in their minds.

That part, which treats of Heteroclite Nouns, I have rendred as short and plain as I could ; which by frequent reading and consulting, as occasion serves, Boys may make themselves Masters of, without any Burden to their Memories.

The Rules for forming the Perfect Tense and Supines of Verbs I have taken out of Mr. Ruddiman's Grammar, which I thought most excellent, because, at one  
view



## PREFACE

ix

view, it shows all the Compounds of Simple Verbs, and also how they are chang'd and form'd from the Simple. I have indeed taken from this many other things in the other parts of Grammar, and think it the most compleat one, that ever I saw, when the *Rudiments* are added to it. But being writ in *Latin*, and what is still more difficult, in *Latin Verse*, it is only fit for such, as understand that Language, and can't be explained to Boys without an infinite deal of Trouble to both Masters and Scholars, as I have found by my own Experience ; and therefore hope, I shall be excused for translating so much of it, as I have done, into our own Language, which otherwise wou'd be hid from, and of no Service to, young Beginners.

The Rules of Syntax I have made as short as I cou'd consistent with Perspicuity, and have disposed them in their natural and regular Order. Those things, that are more difficult, I have thrown under Notes & Observations, which the young Scholar needs not commit to memory, till he has made some progress in Learning. And to all the Rules and every part of them, I have given short and easy Examples, taken out of the best Authors, which being once learnt will be of use to him, not only

x

## PREFACE

ly while he is at School, but all his Life alter.

I have often wondred, that in most Grammars, after Rules, suppose, of Verbs that govern a Dative or Ablative Case, there have been Examples given to some few of them, and none to the rest: Whereas all, as well as some, ought to be supported by proper Authorities taken from the Classics. I have therefore most commonly given two, sometimes more, at least one Example, to every Noun or Verb, that governs a Case, which being constantly turned to and repeated in *par-*ing their Lessons, Boys will in a little time become Masters of, and with pleasure retain.

By this method I have known some Boys, that, in about two Years time after their admission to School, have understood all the common Rules of Syntax, and been able to give proper Examples to them. Which time, and often much more, is spent, in our great Schools, in getting by heart the Latin Grammar, which after all they have not known how to apply, any more than if they had been repeating *Greek* or *Arabic*. Which Drudgery is put upon all Capacities alike, to the great Discouragement of young Gentlemen, in-  
somuch

## PREFACE

xi

ſomuch that it has given ſome of them a  
Dutatteto Learning ever after.

In Proſody, I have explained the moſt  
common ſort of Verſes, and given Rules  
for underſtanding the Nature and Quan-  
tity of Syllables, and Scanning Verſes, in  
as clear and full a manner as is proper  
for ſuch a Work. They that wou'd ſee  
more of it may have Recourſe to Mr.  
Ruddiman's Grammar, where every thing  
is treated with the greateſt Minutenels  
and Exactneſs.

This little Treatiſe, which I have col-  
lected & diſpoſed with the greateſt Or-  
der, Brevity and Perſpicuity, the Nature  
of the thing wou'd allow, I hope will meet  
with a favourable Reception, from my  
learned and judicious Brethren, who are  
engaged with me in the ſame important  
Buſineſs of Education. If I can contribute  
any thing toward the more eaſy and ſpee-  
dy Learning of Grammar, and other uſeful  
Literature, I ſhall think myſelf very hap-  
py, and ſufficiently rewarded for my  
pains.

A new

21 39

---

---

A New  
Latin Grammar.

GRAMMAR is the Art of Speaking and writing properly, according to the Use and Custom of the best Authors.

In Grammar are four Parts.

ORTHOGRAPHY, } } SYNTAX, and  
ETYMOLOGY, } } PROSODY.

---

OF ORTHOGRAPHY.



ORTHOGRAPHY is that Part of Grammar, which teacheth to write Words with proper Letters, divide Syllables, and whatever else pertains to exact Writing.

A Letter is a Mark or Sign of a single Sound. Letters are great or small, as *A, B, &c. a, b, &c.* Great Letters are used in the beginning of Sentences and Verses, of proper Names, Names of Arts, Titles, Honours, and remarkable Words; Small Letters most commonly in other Cases.

Letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

B

A



A Vowel is a Letter, which makes a full and perfect Sound of it Self. as *a, o.*

A Consonant is a Letter, that has no Sound of it Self without a Vowel. Thus *Mns* cannot be founded; *Mons* or *Mens* may be founded.

There are six Vowels, *a, e, i, o, u, y.*  
All the rest are Consonants.

Two Vowels founded together make a Diphthong.

In Latin there are five Diphthongs, *æ*, or *ae, œ*, or *oe, au, eu*, & *ei*; as *ætas* or *aetas*, *cæna* or *coena*, *aurum*, *euge*, *hei*: To which some add these three, *ai, oi, ui*, or *yi*; as *Maia*, *Troia*, *Huic*, *Harpyia*

Of these two are Improper, *i, e*, have the Sound of only one Vowel, as in *ætas*, *Cæna*, pronounced *etas*, *cena*; the rest are proper, *i. e.* have the Sound of both Vowels.

Consonants are single or double. All are Single except these two *X*, and *Z*. *X* is sometimes the same as *CS*, as *Dux*, for *Ducs*; from whence in the Genitive *Duci*; Sometimes the same as *GS*, as *Lex* for *Legs*; from whence *Legis*.

*Z*, is put for *Zs*, as *Zona*, for *Dsona*.

One Letter for shortness is sometimes put for a word; as, *A* for *Aulus*, *C* *Caius*, *D.* *Decimus*, *K* *Kæso*, *L.* *Lucius*, *M.* *Marcus*, *M.* *Manius*, *N.* *Numericus*, *P.* *Publius*, *Q.* *Quintus*.

Sometimes two; as *Ap.* for *Appius*, *Cn.* *Cnaus*, *Op.* *Opiter*, *Sp.* *Spurius*, *Ti.* *Tiberius*.

Sometimes three; as *Mam.* for *Mamercus*, *Sex.* *Sextus*, *Tul.* *Tullus*.

In like manner *F.* is put for *Filius*; *N.* *Ne-*  
*pos*;



*pos; M. F. Marci Filius; M. N. Marci Nepos.*  
and so in others.

Also *P. C.* stands for *Patres Conscripti*. *P. R.*  
*Populus Romanus*. *R. P.* *Respublica*. *S. C.*  
*Senatus Consultum*. *U. C.* *Urbs Condita*. *S. Sa-*  
*lutem*. *S. P. D.* *Salutem plurimam dicit*. *S. P.*  
*Q. R.* *Senatus Populusque Romanus*. *D D. D.*  
*Lat, Dicat, Dedicat. D. D. C. Q. Lat, Dicat,*  
*Consecratque. H S. or L. L. S.* *Sestertium. i. e.*  
*dua æris Libellas & Semissem.*

*A. D.* *Anno Domini*. *A. M.* *Anno Mundi*.  
*A. U. C.* *Anno Urbis Condite*. *M. A.* *Magister*  
*Artium*. *A. B.* *Artium Baccalaureus*. *M. D.*  
*Medicinæ Doctor*. *S. T. P.* *Sacrae Theologiæ*  
*Professor*. *R. S. S.* *Regiæ Societatis Socius*. *L.*  
*L. D.* *Legum Doctor*. *M. S.* *Memoriæ Sacrum*.  
*M. S.* *Manuscriptum*. *M. S. S.* *Manuscripta*.  
*N. B.* *Nota bene*. *E. G.* *Exempli gratia*.

To these add, *Imp.* for *Imperator*. *Cos.* for  
*Consul*. *Aug.* for *Augustus*. *Impp.* *Imperatores*.  
*Coss.* *Consules*. *Augg.* *Augusti*.

Letters, that signify Numbers, are called Nu-  
merals. There are seven Numerals · *I*, one. *V*, five.  
*X*, ten. *L*, fifty. *C*, a Hundred. *D*, five Hundred.  
*M*, a Thousand.

*N B* When a lesser Numeral is put on the left  
hand of a greater, it takes off from it as much as  
it self stands for; when on the right hand, it adds  
as much. As, *IV*, four. *VI*, Six. *XL*, forty.  
*LX*. Sixty.

In this Place it may not be improper to add,  
for the use of Boys, all the Numbers both Car-  
di-

dinal & ordinal, with their proper Marks and Figures.

I.	1.	Unus, <i>One</i> .	Primus, the <i>First</i> .
II.	2.	Duo, <i>Two</i> .	Secundus, <i>Second</i> .
III.	3.	Tres, <i>Three</i> .	Tertius, <i>Third</i> .
IV.	4.	Quatuor, <i>Four</i> .	Quartus, <i>Fourth</i> .
V.	5.	Quinque, <i>Five</i> .	Quintus, <i>Fifth</i> .
VI.	6.	Sex, <i>Six</i> .	Sextus, <i>Sixth</i> .
VII.	7.	Septem, <i>Seven</i> .	Septimus, <i>Seventh</i> .
VIII.	8.	Octo, <i>Eight</i> .	Octavus, <i>Eighth</i> .
IX.	9.	Novem, <i>Nine</i> .	Nonus, <i>Ninth</i> .
X.	10.	Decem, <i>Ten</i> .	Decimus, <i>Tenth</i> .
XI.	11.	Undecim, <i>Eleven</i> .	Undecimus, <i>Eleventh</i> .
XII.	12.	Duodecim, <i>Twelve</i> .	Duodecimus, <i>Twelfth</i> .
XIII.	13.	Tredecim, <i>Thirteen</i> .	Decimus tertius, <i>Thirteenth</i> , or Tertius decimus.
XIV.	14.	Quatuordecim, <i>Fourteen</i> .	Decimus quartus, <i>Fourteenth</i> .
XV.	15.	Quindecim, <i>Fifteen</i> .	Decimus quintus, <i>Fifteenth</i> .
XVI.	16.	Sedecim, <i>Sixteen</i> .	Decimus sextus, <i>Sixteenth</i> .
XVII.	17.	Septendecim, <i>Seventeen</i> .	Decimus septimus, <i>Seventeenth</i> .
XVIII.	18.	Octodecim, <i>Eighteen</i> .	Decimus octavus, <i>Eighteenth</i> .
XIX.	19.	Novemdecim, <i>Nineteen</i> .	Decimus nonus, <i>Nineteenth</i> .
XX.	20.	Viginti, <i>Twenty</i> .	Vicesimus, <i>Twentieth</i> .
XXX.	30.	Triginta, <i>Thirty</i> .	Tricesimus, <i>Thirtieth</i> .

# ORTHOGRAPHY

5

XL.	40.	Quadraginta, <i>Forty</i> . Quadragesimus, <i>Fortieth</i> .
L.	50.	Quinquaginta, <i>Fifty</i> . Quinquagesimus, <i>Fiftieth</i> .
LX.	60.	Sexaginta, <i>Sixty</i> . Sexagesimus, <i>Sixtieth</i> .
LXX.	70.	Septuaginta, <i>Seventy</i> . Septuagesimus, <i>Seventieth</i> .
LXXX.	80.	Octoginta, <i>Eighty</i> . Octogesimus, <i>Eightieth</i> .
XC.	90.	Nonaginta, <i>Ninety</i> . Nonagesimus, <i>Ninetieth</i> .
C.	100.	Centum, <i>a Hundred</i> . Centesimus, <i>Hundredth</i> .
CC.	200.	Ducenti, <i>2 Hundred</i> . Ducentesimus, <i>2 Hundredth</i> .
CCC.	300.	Trecenti, <i>3 Hundred</i> . Trecentesimus, <i>3 Hundredth</i> .
CCCC.	400.	Quadringenti, <i>4 Hundred</i> . Quadringentesimus, <i>4 Hundredth</i> .
D or IO.	500.	Quingenti, <i>5 Hundred</i> . Quingentesimus, <i>5 Hundredth</i> .
DC.	600.	Sexcenti, <i>6 Hundred</i> . Sexcentesimus, <i>6 Hundredth</i> .
DCC.	700.	Septingenti, <i>7 Hundred</i> . Septingentesimus, <i>7 Hundredth</i> .
DCCC.	800.	Octingenti, <i>8 Hundred</i> . Octingentesimus, <i>8 Hundredth</i> .
CM.	900.	Nongenti, <i>9 Hundred</i> . Nongentesimus, <i>9 Hundredth</i> .
M. C IO.	1000.	Mille, <i>a Thousand</i> . Millesimus <i>a Thousandth</i> .
IOO.	10000.	Decem Millia, <i>Ten Thousand</i> .

IOOO

1000. 50000. Quinquaginta millia. *Fifty Thousand.*

C.C.C. 1000. 100000. Centum millia. *a Hundred Thousand.*

A Syllable is one Letter or more pronounced with one Breath as, *A-mo A-ma-bam.*

A Consonant placed between two Vowels must be pronounced with the Latter, as, *Pa-ter, Ma-ter, bo-nus*

When two Consonants come together in the middle of a word, and are not such as will begin words, they must be parted. as, *An-nus, Reg-num.*

If a Word must be parted in Writing at the end of a Line, it must be at the end of a Syllable; and the Division must be marked with two straight Lines, thus, *Legi-mus.*

### Of POINTS and STOPS in writing

A Comma in writing, mark'd thus (,) is a Sign of the shortest Stop, and is sometimes used instead of &; as, *If God be a Master, where is his Fear?*

*I am perswaded that neither Death, nor Life, nor Angels, nor Principalities, nor Powers, nor things present, nor things to come, shall be able to separate us from the Love of God.*

*Itaque omnis gratia, potentia, honos, divitiæ apud illos sunt, aut ubi illi volunt: Nobis reliquerunt pericula, repulsa, judicia, egestatem. Sal.*

A Semicolon, marked with a Comma, and single point over it, thus, (;) is a mark of a longer

ger Stop. It commonly expresses the Division, Contrariety, and opposition of things; as, *He confounds things publick and private; sacred and common; times seasonable and unseasonable.*

*Æsar, dando, sublevando, ignoscendo; Cato, nihil largiundo; gloriam adeptus est. Sal.*

A Colon marked with two points perpendicular (:) is a mark of a stop still longer, and the Sense is compleat, only the Period is not finished; because some Conclusion is made from what went before. as, *O God, in thee do I put my trust: Save me from my Enemies.*

*Vellem equidem vobis placere, Quirites: sed multo malo vos Salvos esse. Liv.*

A Period is a full Stop, (.) that compleats both the Sense and Sentence. as, *The fear of the Lord is the beginning of Wisdom: and happy are they, who are possessed with it.*

*Ager uritur, Urbs obsiderur, belli gloria penes hostes est. Liv.*

The Interrogation Mark is (?) and is used when a Question is ask'd. The Voice must be kept from falling, the person who ask'd the Question being in suspense, and Expectation of an Answer. as, *Have you neither fear nor shame; sense of Religion, nor Humanity?*

*Et quæ tanta fuit Romam tibi causa videndi?*

The Admiration Mark is a straight Line and a prick under it (!) It shews that the Voice must be raised in *Wonder, Indignation, Joy*, or any other Passion. *Oh that glorious Day!*

*Proh Deum atque hominum fidem!*

Parenthesis is, when after a Sentence begun, another Sentence, or part of a Sentence is put in,



before the first is finished, which serves to explain or enlarge the Sense. *Nicodemus saith unto them, ( he that came to Jesus by night ) doth our Law condemn any man before it hear him?*

*Di, coeptis ( nam, Di, mutastis et illas ) adspirate meis. Ovid.*

An Hyphen connects the Syllables of a Word writ part at the End of one Line, and part at the beginning of the next; as, *Gram-mar*.

It also joins two words into One; as, *Pater-familias*.

An Apostrophe is the mark of a Letter taken away; as, *Tun' habes*, for *Tune habes*. *Lov'd* for *Loved*.

## OF ETYMOLOGY.

**E**TYMOLOGY is that part of Grammar, that teacheth the true Origin and right Distinction of Words, or the parts of Speech.

Words, or the parts of Speech, are of eight Kinds; four of which are declined, *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle*; and four are Undeclined, *Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection*.

To be *declined* is when a Word changes its Ending. To be *Undeclined* is when a Word does not change its Ending.

### Of a NOUN.

**A** NOUN is the Name of a Thing. as *Homo, a Man; Virtus, Virtue*.



Of Nouns there are two sorts, *Substantive* and *Adjective*.

A Noun Substantive is a Word or Name, that may be understood of its self, having before it in English *a*, *an*, or *the*; as *Manus*, a Hand; *Ovum*, an Egg; *Rex*, the King.

A Noun Adjective is a Word added to a Substantive, which signifies the Nature or Quality of the Substantive; as, *durus*, hard; *mollis*, soft; *felix*, happy.

A Noun is declined with Number, Case and Gender. Number shews whether a word signifies one or more.

There are two Numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*. The Singular Number expresses but one, as *Homo*, a Man. The Plural Number expresses more than one as *Homines*, Men.

Case shews the different Endings of the same Noun.

There are Six Cases, the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative* and *Ablative*.

The Nominative Case comes before the Verb. as, *Rex Venit*, the King cometh.

The Genitive has the Sign *of*, or *'s* with an Apostrophe. as *Lex Dei*, the Law of God, or God's Law.

The Dative has the signs *to*, and *for*. as *Do tibi librum*, I give a Book to you. *Non omnibus dormio*, I don't sleep for every Body. Sometimes the Sign is omitted; as, *mihi tibi Literas*, I sent you a Letter.

The Accusative is govern'd of a Verb Transitive, or a Preposition, or comes before the Infinitive Mood; as, *Misit Legatos ad Regem se ventu-*

*turum*; He sent Embassadors to the King, that he would come.

The Vocative is the Case of calling or speaking to; as *O Rex, vive in æternum*; O King, live for ever.

The Ablative has the Signs *In, with, for, from, by, and than*; as *Urbe*, in the City; *ferro*, with a Sword.

There are three Genders, *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

The first has the Article *Hic*; as *Hic Vir*, a Man; the second has the Article *Hæc*; as *Hæc Mulier*, a Woman; the third has the Article *Hoc*; as *Hoc Saxum*, a Stone.

---

## Of the DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES

**T**HERE are five DECLENSIONS, or different ways of declining Nouns, which are known by the Ending of the Gen. Singular.

The Genitive of the first ends in *æ*, the Second in *i*, the Third in *is*, the Fourth in *us*, the Fifth in *ei*.

The first Declension has four different Endings in the Nominative Singular; 1 Latin in *a*, as *Musa*; 2 Greek in *as, es, e*; as *Æneas, Anchises, Penelope*.

Ex-

## Examples of the first Declension.

	Sing.	
Nom. Hæc	<i>Musa,</i>	a Song.
Gen.	<i>Musæ,</i>	of a Song.
Dat.	<i>Musæ,</i>	to a Song.
Acc.	<i>Musam,</i>	a Song.
Voc.	<i>Musa,</i>	o Song.
Abl.	<i>Musa,</i>	by a Song.

	Plural.	
Nom. Hæ	<i>Musæ,</i>	Songs.
Gen.	<i>Musarum,</i>	of Songs.
Dat.	<i>Musis,</i>	to Songs.
Acc.	<i>Musas,</i>	Songs.
Voc.	<i>Musæ,</i>	o Songs.
Abl.	<i>Musis,</i>	by Songs.

	Sing.	
Nom. Hæc	<i>Penna,</i>	a Pen.
Gen.	<i>Pennæ,</i>	of a Pen.
Dat.	<i>Pennæ,</i>	to a Pen.
Acc.	<i>Pennam,</i>	a Pen.
Voc.	<i>Penna,</i>	o Pen.
Abl.	<i>Penna,</i>	by a Pen.

	Plural.	
Nom. Hæ	<i>Pennæ,</i>	Pens.
Gen.	<i>Pennarum,</i>	of Pens.
Dat.	<i>Pennis,</i>	to Pens.
Acc.	<i>Pennas,</i>	Pens.
Voc.	<i>Pennæ,</i>	o Pens.
Abl.	<i>Pennis,</i>	by Pens.

\*The Greek Nouns of this Declension are thus declined. Sing. N. *Æneas*, G. *Æneæ*, D. *Æneæ*, Ac. *Æneam* or *an*, V. A. *Ænea*.

Sing. N. *Anchisēs*, G. *Anchisæ*, D. *Anchisæ* Ac. *Anchisen*, V. Ab. *Anchisē*, or *Anchisa*.

Sing. N. *Penelope*, G. *Penelopes*, D. *Penelope*, Ac. *Penelopen*, Voc. *Penelope*, Ab. *Penelope*.

If any of them have the Plural, they are declined like *Musæ*, *arum*.

The Poets sometime change *æ* into *ai* or *as*, as Gen. *Terrai*, *Aulai*, *Familias*, *vias*, for *Terræ*, *Aulæ*, *Familie*, *Vie*. Sometimes *arum* in the Gen. plural is contracted into *um* as *Cælicolum*, for *Cælicolarum*.

The Dative and Ablative plural of some Nouns of this Declension make *abus*, to distinguish them from Males of the Second; such as *Filia*, *Nata*, *Dea*, *Domina*, *Socia*, *Famula*, *Serva*, *Liberta*, *Anima*, *Mula*, *Equa*, *Alina*.

\*Let the Boys decline also Adjectives with Substantives. as, *Penna bona*, *Penna mollis*, *Poeta magnus*, *Poeta vetus*.

The Second Declension has in the Nom. five different Endings, *Er*, *Jr*, *Ur*, *Us* and *Um*; as *Liber*, *Vir*, *Satur*, *Annus*, and *Regnum*; and two Greek, *os* & *on*; as *Logos*, *Symbolon*.

Ex-

## Examples of the Second Declension,

### Singular.

Nom. Hic	<i>Liber,</i>	a Book.
Gen.	<i>Libri,</i>	of a Book.
Dat.	<i>Libro,</i>	to a Book.
Acc.	<i>Librum,</i>	a Book.
Voc.	<i>Liber,</i>	o Book.
Abl.	<i>Libro,</i>	by a Book.

### Plural.

Nom. Hi	<i>Libri,</i>	Books.
Gen.	<i>Librorum,</i>	of Books.
Dat.	<i>Libris,</i>	to Books.
Acc.	<i>Libros,</i>	Books.
Voc.	<i>Libri,</i>	o Books.
Abl.	<i>Libris,</i>	by Books.

### Sing.

Nom. Hic	<i>Annus,</i>	a Year.
Gen.	<i>Anni,</i>	of a Year.
Dat.	<i>Anno,</i>	to a Year.
Acc.	<i>Annum,</i>	a Year.
Voc.	<i>Anne,</i>	o Year.
Abl.	<i>Anno,</i>	by a Year.

### Plural.

Nom. Hi	<i>Anni,</i>	Years.
Gen.	<i>Annorum,</i>	of Years.
Dat.	<i>Annis,</i>	to Years.
Acc.	<i>Annos,</i>	Years.
Voc.	<i>Anni,</i>	o Years.
Abl.	<i>Annis,</i>	by Years.

The



The Nominative and Vocative are always the same, except in Nouns in *us*, of the 2d. Declension, which make *e*; and proper Names in *ius*, which cast away *us*; as *Annus*, Voc. *Anne*; *Antonius*, V. *Antoni*. Alto *Filius*, makes *Fili*, *Meus*, *mi*, and *Deus*, *O Deus*.

All Nouns of the Neuter Gender have the Nomin. Acc. & Voc. alike in both Numbers, and in the plural these three Cases always end in *a*.

Sing.

Nom. Hoc	<i>Regnum</i> , a Kingdom.
Gen.	<i>Regni</i> , of a Kingdom.
Dat.	<i>Regno</i> , to a Kingdom.
Acc.	<i>Regnum</i> , a Kingdom.
Voc.	<i>Regnum</i> , o Kingdom.
Abl.	<i>Regno</i> , by a Kingdom.

Plural.

Nom. Hæc	<i>Regna</i> , Kingdoms.
Gen.	<i>Regnorum</i> of Kingdoms.
Dat.	<i>Regnis</i> , to Kingdoms.
Acc.	<i>Regna</i> , Kingdoms.
Voc.	<i>Regna</i> , o Kingdoms.
Abl.	<i>Regnis</i> , by Kingdoms.

Greek Nouns in *os* make the Accusative in *en*. Nouns in *eus*, are declined like Latin Nouns in *us*, as *Orpheus*, *i*, *o*, *um* &c tho the Poets sometimes decline 'em in this Manner.

Sing N. *Orpheus*, G. *Orpheos*, D. *Orphei*, Ac. *Orphea*, V. *Orpheu*, Ab. *Orpheo*.

\* Decline *Liber novus*, *Annus magnus*, *nova Methodus*, *magna Synodus*, *magnum Templum*, *mollis Animus*, *melle Ovum*.

Nouns



# ETYMOLOGY

15

Nouns of the 3d. Declension are of all Endings,  
and of all Genders, and are thus declined.

## Examples of the 3d. Declension.

### Sing.

Nom.	Hic	<i>Honor,</i>	Honour.
Gen.		<i>Honoris,</i>	of Honour.
Dat.		<i>Honori,</i>	to Honour.
Acc.		<i>Honorem,</i>	Honour.
Voc.		<i>Honor,</i>	o Honour.
Abl.		<i>Honore,</i>	by Honour.

### Plural.

Nom.	Hi	<i>Honores,</i>	Honours.
Gen.		<i>Honorum,</i>	of Honours.
Dat.		<i>Honoribus,</i>	to Honours.
Acc.		<i>Honores,</i>	Honours.
Voc.		<i>Honores,</i>	o Honours.
Abl.		<i>Honoribus,</i>	by Honours.

### Sing.

Nom.	Hæc	<i>Mens,</i>	the Mind.
Gen.		<i>Mentis,</i>	of the Mind.
Dat.		<i>Menti,</i>	to the Mind.
Acc.		<i>Mentem,</i>	the Mind.
Voc.		<i>Mens,</i>	o Mind.
Abl.		<i>Mente,</i>	by the Mind.

### Plural.

Nom.	Hæ	<i>Mentes,</i>	the Minds.
Gen.		<i>Mentium,</i>	of the Minds.
Dat.		<i>Mentibus,</i>	to the Minds.
Acc.		<i>Mentes,</i>	the Minds.
Voc.		<i>Mentes,</i>	o Minds.
Abl.		<i>Mentibus,</i>	by the Minds.

Some-

## ETYMOLOGY

Some Nouns make the Accusative in *im*, as well as *em*, and the Abl. in *i* as well as *e*.

## Singular

Nom.	Hæc	<i>Navis</i> ,	a Ship.
Gen.		<i>Navis</i> ,	of a Ship.
Dat.		<i>Navi</i> ,	to a Ship.
Acc.		<i>Navem</i> or <i>im</i> .	a Ship.
Voc.		<i>Navis</i> ,	o Ship.
Abl.		<i>Nave</i> or <i>i</i> ,	by a Ship.

## Plural

Nom.	Hæ	<i>Naves</i> ,	Ships.
Gen.		<i>Navium</i>	of Ships.
Dat.		<i>Navibus</i> ,	to Ships.
Acc.		<i>Naves</i> ,	Ships.
Voc.		<i>Naves</i> ,	o Ships.
Abl.		<i>Navibus</i> ,	by Ships.

## Singular

Nom.	Hoc	<i>Altare</i> ,	an Altar.
Gen.		<i>Altaris</i> ,	of an Altar.
Dat.		<i>Altari</i> ,	to an Altar.
Acc.		<i>Altare</i> ,	an Altar.
Voc.		<i>Altare</i> ,	o Altar
Abl.		<i>Altari</i> ,	by an Altar.

## Plural

Nom.	Hæc	<i>Altaria</i> ,	Altars.
Gen.		<i>Altarium</i> ,	of Altars.
Dat.		<i>Altaribus</i> ,	to Altars.
Acc.		<i>Altaria</i> ,	Altars.
Voc.		<i>Altaria</i> ,	o Altars.
Abl.		<i>Altaribus</i> ,	by Altars.

Singu-

# ETYMOLOGY

17

Sing.

Nom.	<i>Hoc Corpus</i> ,	the Body.
Gen.	<i>Corporis</i> ,	of the Body.
Dat.	<i>Corpori</i> ,	to the Body.
Acc.	<i>Corpus</i> ,	the Body.
Voc.	<i>Corpus</i> ,	o Body.
Abl.	<i>Corpore</i> ,	by the Body.

Plural.

Nom.	<i>Hæc Corpora</i> ,	the Bodies.
Gen.	<i>Corporum</i> ,	of the Bodies.
Dat.	<i>Corporibus</i> ,	to the Bodies.
Acc.	<i>Corpora</i> ,	the Bodies.
Voc.	<i>Corpora</i> ,	o Bodies.
Abl.	<i>Corporibus</i> ,	by the Bodies.

Sing.

Nom	<i>Hoc Munus</i> ,	a Gift.
Gen.	<i>Muneris</i> ,	of a Gift.
Dat.	<i>Muneri</i> ,	to a Gift.
Acc.	<i>Munus</i> ,	a Gift.
Voc.	<i>Munus</i> ,	o Gift.
Abl.	<i>Munere</i> ,	by a Gift.

Plural.

Nom.	<i>Hæc Munera</i> ,	Gifts.
Gen.	<i>Munerum</i> ,	of Gifts.
Dat.	<i>Muneribus</i> ,	to Gifts.
Acc.	<i>Munera</i> ,	Gifts.
Voc.	<i>Munera</i> ,	o Gifts.
Abl.	<i>Muneribus</i> ,	by Gifts.

Decline *Labor durus*, *Labor gravis*, *Mens divina*, *Mens nobilis*, *Longa navis*, *VeloX navis*, *Altare sacrum*, *Altare pingue*, *Corpus formosum*,  
C for-

forte *Pectus*, *gratum Munus*, *leve Munus*.

Greek Nouns sometimes make the Acc. Singular in *a*, and the Acc. plural in *as*; as, *Lampas*, *Lampada*, *Lampadas*; *Salamis*, *Salamina*; *Æther*, *Æthera*. &c.

Proper Names of *Rivers* and *Cities* in *Is* make the Acc. Sing. *Im*. as *Tibris*, *Tibrim*; *Neapolis*, *Neapolim*; Some make *In*; as *Bætis*, *Bætim* or *Bætin*; *Tigris*, *Tigrin* or *Tigrim*.

Proper Names of *Men*, and *heathen Gods* of Greek Original, make the Acc. Sing. in *Im* or *In*. as *Adonis*, *Adonidis*, *Adonin*, or *im*; *Alexis*, *Alexim*; *Busiris*, *Busirim*; *Daphnis*, *Daphnin*; *Paris*, in *Im*.

Also these Nouns following make *im* in the Accusative; *Amussim*, *Burim*, *Canabim*, *Cucumim*, *Gummim*, *Ravim*, *Sinapim*, *Sitim*, *Tusim*, *Vim*; and their Abl. most commonly in *i*.

These make *em* or *im*, in the Acc. and *e* or *i*, in the Ablative; *Aqualis*, *Avis*, *i* rarely, *Clavis*, *Cutis*, *Febris*, *Messis*, *Navis*, *Ovis*, *Pelvis*, *i* rarely, *Puppis*, *Ratis*, *Restis*, *Securis*, *Sentis*, *Turris*.

These make *e* or *i* in the Ablative; *Amnis*, *i* rarely, *Anguis*, *i* rarely, *Civis*, *i* rarely, *Classis*, *i* rarely, *Collis*, *Finis*, *Iustis*, *i* rarely, *Ignis*, *Imber*, *i* rarely, *Labes*, *i* rarely, *Messis*, *i* rarely, *Mons*, *i* rarely, *Orbis*, *i* rarely, *Iux*, *Mens*, *i* rarely, *Pars*, *i* rarely, *Postis*, *i* rarely, *Rus*, *Seges*, *i* rarely, *Sordes*, *i* rarely, *Sors*, *i* rarely, *Supellex*, *Vectis*, *i* rarely, *Unguis*, *i* rarely, *Canis*, *i* rarely, *Bilis*, *i* rarely. Neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*, make their Ablative in *i*, their Nom. Acc. Voc. plural in *ia*.

All

All *Adjectives* of one ending and *Comparatives* make *e* or *i* in the Ablative, tho' they more frequently end in *e*.

All that end in *i*, or *e* and *i*, in the Ablative, make *ium* in the Genitive plural: except *Comparatives*, and these *Positives*, *Compos*, *Impos*, *Dives*, *Degener*, *Congener*, *Uber*, *puer*, *Impuer*, *memor*, *pugilis*, *Strigilis*, *vigil*, *artifex*, *complex*, *Supplex*.

Also Nouns ending with two Consonants make *ium* in the Genitive Plural, as *Infans*, *Parens*, &c. (except the Compounds of *capi*, *forceps*, *princeps*, *particeps*, &c. and all Greek Nouns, as *Arabum*, *Cyclopum*, *Chalybum*, *Phrygum*; and also *Clientum*, *Cælibum*, *Consortum*, *Hymnum*, *Inopum*.) And Nouns not encreasing in the Genitive, as *Orbis*, *Callis*, &c. Except *Canum*, *Fratrum*, *Patrum*, *Matrum*, *Juvenum*, *Senum*, *Opum*, *Panum*, *Vatum*, *Volucrum*.

These likewise make *ium*, *As*, *Bes*, *Cor*, *Cos*, *Dos*, *Faux*, *Glis*, *Lar*, *Lis*, *Mas*, *Mus*, *Nix*, *Nox*, *Os*, *Vas*, *vadis*.

*Poema* makes in the Dat. and Abl. plural, *Poematis* or *Poematibus*. *Bos*, *bovis*, by Contraction, *G Boum* D. & Abl. *Bobus* and *Bubus*. *Aves* makes in the Gen. plural *Alituum*.

The fourth Declension has two Endings, *us* Masculine and Feminine, *u* Neuter.



## ETYMOLOGY

## Examples of the 4th. Declension.

## Sing.

Nom.	Hic <i>Gradus</i> ,	a Step.
Gen.	<i>Gradus</i> ,	of a Step.
Dat.	<i>Gradui</i> ,	to a Step.
Acc.	<i>Gradum</i> ,	a Step.
Voc.	<i>Gradus</i> ,	o Step.
Abl.	<i>Gradu</i> ,	by a Step.

## Plural.

Nom.	Hi <i>Gradus</i> ,	Steps.
Gen.	<i>Graduum</i> ,	of Steps.
Dat.	<i>Gradibus</i> ,	to Steps.
Acc.	<i>Gradus</i> ,	Steps.
Voc.	<i>Gradus</i> ,	o Steps.
Abl.	<i>Gradibus</i> ,	by Steps.

## Singular.

Nom.	Hæc <i>Manus</i> ,	a Hand.
Gen.	<i>Manus</i> ,	of a Hand.
Dat.	<i>Manui</i> ,	to a Hand.
Acc.	<i>Manum</i> ,	a Hand.
Voc.	<i>Manus</i> ,	o Hand.
Abl.	<i>Manu</i> ,	by a Hand.

## Plural.

Nom.	Hæ <i>Manus</i> ,	Hands.
Gen.	<i>Manuum</i> ,	of Hands.
Dat.	<i>Manibus</i> ,	to Hands.
Acc.	<i>Manus</i> ,	Hands.
Voc.	<i>Manus</i> ,	o Hands.
Abl.	<i>Manibus</i> ,	by Hands.

Sing.

Singular

Nom.	Hoc <i>Cornu</i> , a Horn.
Gen.	<i>Cornu</i> , of Horn.
Dat.	<i>Cornu</i> , to a Horn.
Acc.	<i>Cornu</i> , a Horn.
Voc.	<i>Cornu</i> , o Horn.
Abl.	<i>Cornu</i> , by a Horn.

Plural

Nom.	Hæc <i>Cornua</i> , Horns.
Gen.	<i>Cornuum</i> , of Horns.
Dat.	<i>Cornibus</i> , to Horns.
Acc.	<i>Cornua</i> , Horns.
Voc.	<i>Cornua</i> , o Horns.
Abl.	<i>Cornibus</i> , by Horns.

Decline *tardus Gradus*, *sublimis Gradus*, *candida Manus*, *fortis Manus*, *dextrum Cornu*.

Anciently *Vis* was put for *us* in the Gen. from whence by Contraction *us*; and *u* for *ui* in the Dat. as *Anuis causa*; *curru Subjungere tigres*.

*Alcentus*, *Fructus*, *Ornatus*, *Quæstus*, *Senatus*, *Tumultus*, have the Genitive Singular sometimes in *i*.

In the Dative and Ablative plural these Nouns have *Ubus*; *Arcus*, *Acus*, *Ficus*, *Lacus*, *Partus*, *Quercus*, *Specus*, *Tribus*.

These have *ibus* and *ubus*, *Artus*, *Portus*, *Quæstus*, *Genu*, *Veru*. *Iesus* makes in the Acc. *Iesum*, in all other Cases *Iesu*.

*Domus* is thus declined of the 2d & 4th Declension.

Sing. N. *Domus*, G. *Domi* & *Domus*, D. *Domo* & *Domui*, A. *Domum*, V. *Domus*, A. *Lomo*. Plural. N. *Domus*, G. *Domorum* & *Domuum*, D. *Domibus*, A. *Domos*, & *Domus*, V. *Domus*. Abl. *Domibus*. According to the old Verse.

*Tolle me, tu, mi, mis; Si declinare Domum vis.*

The 5th Declension has only one Ending *es*, which is of the Feminine Gender.

### Examples of the 5th Declension.

Sing.	
Nom. Hæc	<i>Facies</i> , the Face.
Gen.	<i>Faciei</i> , of the Face.
Dat.	<i>Faciei</i> , to the Face.
Acc.	<i>Faciem</i> , the Face.
Voc.	<i>Facies</i> , o Face.
Abl.	<i>Facie</i> , by the Face.

Plural.	
Nom. Hæc	<i>Facies</i> , the Faces.
Gen.	<i>Facierum</i> , of the Faces.
Dat.	<i>Faciebus</i> , to the Faces.
Acc.	<i>Facies</i> , the Faces.
Voc.	<i>Facies</i> , o Faces.
Abl.	<i>Faciebus</i> , by the Faces.

Sing.

	Sing.
Nom. Hæc	<i>Res</i> , a Thing.
Gen.	<i>Rei</i> , of a Thing.
Dat.	<i>Rei</i> , to a Thing.
Acc.	<i>Rem</i> , a Thing.
Voc.	<i>Res</i> , o Thing.
Abl.	<i>Re</i> , by a Thing.

	Plural.
Nom. Hæ	<i>Res</i> , Things.
Gen.	<i>Rerum</i> , of Things.
Dat.	<i>Rebus</i> , to Things.
Acc.	<i>Res</i> , Things.
Voc.	<i>Res</i> , o Things.
Abl.	<i>Rebus</i> , by Things.

Note, *Meridies* of the Masculine Gender wants the plural. *Acies*, *Dies*, *Facies*, *Res*, are perfect in both Numbers. Most of the other Words of this Declension have only the Nom. Acc. & Voc. plural.

The Gen. and Dative Singular are found to end in *e*; as, *Prodiderit commissa fide*. Hor.

*Vix decima die reliqua*. Sal.

Decline *Facies formosa*, *Facies minax*, *Res publica*, *Res turpis*.

## Rules for the GENDER of NOUNS.

**T**HERE are two Ways of knowing the Gender of Nouns. The first by Signification. The second by Declension, & Ending in the Nominative Singular.

First By Signification.

The Names of Males, of whatever Declension they be, are Masculine; and the Names of Females, Feminine. as *Vir*, a Man, *Alexander*: *Equus*, a Horse, *Bucephalus*: *Puer*, a Boy, *Marcus*: *Regina*, a Queen, *Carolina*.

Nouns signifying both Sexes are of the Mas. & Fem. Gender; Masculine when apply'd to Male, Feminine when apply'd to Female; as *parens bonus*, a good Parent-father; *bona parens*, a good Parent-Mother.

According to *Vossius* these Nouns are Masculine & Feminine.

*Conjux atque parens, infans, patruelis & haeres, Affinis, vindex, judex, dux, Miles & hostis, Augur & Antistes, vates, Conviva, Sacerdos, Municipi que addas, Adolescens, Civis & auctor, Custos, Nemo, comis, testis, Sus, bosque, canisque.*

To which Mr *Johnson* adds *Chiens, objes, Præs, Princeps.*

These are only of the Masculine Gender, tho' they may be apply'd to both Sexes.

*Camelus, Cocles, eques, exul, fur, homo, hospes, Interpres, Juvenis, lano, liberi, opifex, pedes, præsul, pugil, Senex.*

*N. B.* *Mancipium*, a Slave, *Matrimonium*, a Wife, *Prostibulum*, a Whore, *Scortum* a Whore, *Servitium* a Slave, are Neuters, tho' used for Men & Women.

The Names of *Cities, Islands, Towns* and *Countries* are commonly Feminine, because of the general Words, *Urbs, Insula, Regio* or *Terra*; as *Flis, Carthago, Briannia, Cyprus, Græcia, Persis.*

The



## ETYMOLOGY

25

The Names of *Trees, Plays, Poems & Ships* are Feminine, because of the general Words, *Arbor, Fabula, Navis*.

The Names of *Months, Rivers & Winds* are Masculine, because of the Words, *Menfis, Fluvius & Ventus*.

Most of which Rules are comprehended by Mr *Johnson* in these Verses.

*Genders of Mountains do depend,  
For the most part upon their End:  
Yet these, some after, others once,  
Do take their Gender too from Mons.  
Thus Towns and Countries Names we see,  
For the same reason Female be.  
And Rivers too Male Gender take,  
For the most part for Fluvius sake,  
Nouns too Appellative of Tree,  
For Arbor's sake will Female be.*

Exception.

*But Males are Trees that end in Ster,  
Neuters in Ur. & likewise Er.*

Secondly. Of the GENDER of Nouns by their Declensions & Endings.

The first & fifth are Females all,  
The second & fourth are Males;  
But in the third observe the End,  
On that the Gender doth depend.

Nouns of the first Declension are feminine; as

*Hæc Musa, æ, a Song.*

*Hæc Penna, æ, a Pen.*

*Hæc Epitome, es, an Epitome.*

Ex-

Except these Nouns deriv'd from the Greek,  
in *As* & *Es*: And Nouns in *a*, deriv'd from Verbs.

as	Hic <i>Adria, æ.</i>	the Adriatic Sea.
	Hic <i>Cometa, æ.</i>	a Comet.
	Hic <i>Planeta, æ.</i>	a Planet.
	Hic <i>Pandecta, æ.</i>	
	Hic <i>Eckinometra, æ.</i>	a Shell-fish.
	Hic <i>Advena, æ.</i>	a Stranger.
	Hic <i>Agricola, æ.</i>	a Husbandman.
	Hic or Hæc <i>Talpa, æ.</i>	a Mole.
	Hic or Hæc <i>Dama, æ.</i>	a Deer.

Nouns of the Second Declension are Masculine.

as	Hic <i>Liber, i.</i>	a Book.
	Hic <i>Annus, i.</i>	a Year.

Except these of the Feminine.

Hæc <i>Alvus, i.</i>	the Belly.
Hæc <i>Colus, i.</i>	a Distaff.
Hæc <i>Ficus, i.</i>	a Fig or Fig-tree.
Hæc <i>Humus, i.</i>	the Ground.

Except these of the Neuter.

Hoc <i>Virus,</i>	Poison.
Hoc <i>Pelagus,</i>	the Sea.

Hic & Hoc *Vulgus,* the Common people.

Those form'd from the Greek in *Os* Feminine.

<i>Abyssus, i.</i>	a Deep Pit.
<i>Antidotus, i.</i>	an Antidote.
<i>Arctus, i.</i>	the Great Bear.
<i>Carbasus, i.</i>	Fine Linnen.
<i>Dialectus, i.</i>	a Dialect.
<i>Fremus, i.</i>	a Wilderness.
<i>Diametrus, i.</i>	a Diameter.

## ETYMOLOGY

27

<i>Diphthongus, i.</i>	a Diphthong.
<i>Eos,</i>	the Morning.
<i>Exodus, i.</i>	a Departure.
<i>Methodus, i.</i>	a Method.
<i>Periodus, i.</i>	a Period.
<i>Perimetrus, i.</i>	a Circumference.
<i>Synodus, i.</i>	an Assembly.
<i>Vannus, i.</i>	a Fan.

The Names of Jewels & Precious Stones feminine, because of the word *Gemma*.

<i>Amethystus, i.</i>	the Amethyst.
<i>Sapphirus, i.</i>	the Sapphire. &c

The Names of Plants and Fruits feminine, because of the word *Planta* or *Herba*. as

<i>Crocus, i.</i>	Saffron.
<i>Hyssopus, i.</i>	Hyssop. &c.

Except these that are Doubtful,

Hic or Hæc <i>Atomus,</i>	an Atom.
Hic or Hæc <i>Arquus,</i>	the Rainbow.
Hic or Hæc <i>Balanus,</i>	a Date.
Hic or Hæc <i>Barbitus,</i>	a Lyre
Hic or Hæc <i>Grossus,</i>	a Green Fig.
Hic or Hæc <i>Penu,</i>	Provisions.
Hic or Hæc <i>Phaselus,</i>	a Gally.
Hic or Hæc <i>Pampinus,</i>	a Vine Leaf.
Hi. or Hæc <i>Rubus,</i>	a Bush.
Hic, Hæc, Hoc <i>Specus,</i>	a Cave.

Nouns of the Second ending in *on* or *um* are Neuter. as Hoc *Bellum, i.* War.

Hoc *Donum, i.* a Gift.

Hoc

## ETYMOLOGY

Hoc *Symbolon*, *i.* a Token.

Hoc *Symphosion*, *i.* an Entertainment.

Nouns of the third Declension are known by their Endings.

1st. Nouns ending in *O*, *N*, *Er*, *Or* & *Os*, are Masculine. as

<i>O.</i>	Hic <i>Sermo</i> , <i>nis</i> ,	a Word.
	Hic <i>Pulmo</i> , <i>nis</i> ,	the Lungs.
<i>N.</i>	Hic <i>Pæan</i> , <i>is</i> ,	a Song.
	Hic <i>Ren</i> , <i>is</i> ,	the Kidneys.
	Hic <i>Pecten</i> , <i>inis</i> ,	a Comb.
	Hic <i>Delphin</i> , <i>is</i> ,	a Dolphin.
	Hic <i>Canon</i> , <i>is</i> ,	a Rule.
<i>Er.</i>	Hic <i>Venter</i> , <i>tris</i> ,	the Belly.
	Hic <i>Imber</i> , <i>bris</i> ,	Rain.
<i>Or.</i>	Hic <i>Labor</i> , <i>is</i> ,	Labour.
	Hic <i>Dolor</i> , <i>is</i> ,	Grief.
<i>Os.</i>	Hic <i>Mos</i> , <i>ris</i> ,	a Custom.
	Hic <i>Flos</i> , <i>ris</i> ,	a Flower.

Except in *O* this Word,

Hæc *Caro*, *nis*, Flesh.

And Nouns in *Io*, *Do*, *Go*. also

Hæc *Echo*, an Echo.

Hæc *Halo*, *nis*, a Circle about the Sun.

Except in *Men* Neuter, also these in *en*.

Hoc *Gluten*, *inis*, Glue.

Hoc *Inguen*, *inis*, the Groin.

Hoc *Pollen*, *inis*, fine Flour.

Hoc *Unguen*, *inis*, Ointment.

Except these Feminine in *on*.

Hæc *Aleyon*, *is*, the Kingsfisher.

Hæc

# ETYMOLOGY

29

Hæc *Sindon*, is, fine Linnen.  
Hæc *Icon*, is, a Picture.  
Hæc *Aedon*, is, a Nightingale.

Except in *Er* Neuter.

Hoc <i>Cadaver</i> , is,	a Carcass.
Hoc <i>Cicer</i> , is,	Vetches.
Hoc <i>Cucumer</i> , is,	a Cucumber.
Hoc <i>Iter</i> , in <i>eris</i> ,	a Journey.
Hoc <i>Lasfer</i> , is,	a Gum.
Hoc <i>Laver</i> , is,	Water cresses.
Hoc <i>Papaver</i> , is,	Poppy.
Hoc <i>Piper</i> , is,	Pepper.
Hoc <i>Siler</i> , is,	an Osier.
Hoc <i>Sifer</i> , is,	a Parsnip.
Hoc <i>Spinther</i> , is,	a Buckle.
Hoc <i>Suber</i> , is,	Cork.
Hoc <i>Tuber</i> , is,	a Mushroom.
Hoc <i>Uber</i> , is,	a Pap.
Hoc <i>Ver</i> , is,	the Spring.
Hoc <i>Verber</i> , is,	a Scourge.
Hoc <i>Zingiber</i> , is,	Ginger.

Except in *Or* Feminine & Neuter.

Hæc <i>Arbor</i> , is,	a Tree.
Hoc <i>Ador</i> , is,	Wheat.
Hoc <i>Æquor</i> , is,	the Sea.
Hoc <i>Cor</i> , in <i>dis</i> ,	the Heart.
Hoc <i>Marmor</i> , is,	Marble.

Except in *Os* Feminine & Neuter.

Hæc <i>Arbor</i> , is,	a Tree.
Hæc <i>Cos</i> , in <i>tis</i> ,	a Whetstone.
Hæc <i>Dos</i> , in <i>tis</i> ,	a Portion.

Hoc



## ETYMOLOGY

Hoc <i>O</i> , <i>oris</i> ,	the Mouth.
Hoc <i>O</i> , <i>offis</i> ,	a Bone.
Hoc <i>Chaos</i> ,	A confused Mass.
Hoc <i>Epos</i> ,	an Epic Poem.
Hoc <i>Melos</i> ,	a Song.

Nouns of the 3d Declension, ending in *Io*, *Do*, *Go*, *As*, *Es*, *Is*, *Tis*, *X*, & *S*, with a Consonant before it, are Feminine as

<i>Io</i> .	Hæc <i>Regio</i> , <i>nis</i> ,	a Country.
	Hæc <i>Opinio</i> , <i>nis</i> ,	an Opinion.
<i>Do</i>	Hæc <i>Arundo</i> , <i>inis</i> ,	a Reed.
	Hæc <i>Multitudo</i> , <i>inis</i> ,	a Multitude.
<i>Go</i> .	Hæc <i>Imago</i> , <i>inis</i> ,	an Image.
	Hæc <i>Origo</i> , <i>inis</i> ,	an Original.
<i>As</i> .	Hæc <i>Voluptas</i> , <i>tis</i> ,	Pleasure.
	Hæc <i>Civitas</i> , <i>tis</i> ,	a City.
<i>Es</i> .	Hæc <i>Sedes</i> , <i>is</i> ,	a Seat.
	Hæc <i>Nubes</i> , <i>is</i> ,	a Cloud.
<i>Is</i> .	Hæc <i>Navis</i> , <i>is</i> ,	a Ship.
	Hæc <i>Classis</i> , <i>is</i> ,	a Fleet.
<i>Tis</i> .	Hæc <i>Citharis</i> , <i>yos</i> ,	a Lute.
	Hæc <i>Chlamys</i> , <i>dos</i> ,	a Soldiers Cloak.
<i>X</i> .	Hæc <i>Lex</i> , <i>gis</i> ,	a Law.
	Hæc <i>Nox</i> , <i>etis</i> ,	the Night.
<i>S</i> .	Hæc <i>Mens</i> , <i>tis</i> ,	the Mind.
	Hæc <i>Urbs</i> , <i>is</i> ,	a City.

Except in *Io*, Masculine; The Names of Animals, as

Hic <i>Scorpio</i> , <i>nis</i> ,	a Scorpion.
Hic <i>Stellio</i> , <i>nis</i> ,	a Lizard. & also
Hic <i>Duernio</i> , <i>nis</i> ,	the Number two.
Hic <i>Pugio</i> , <i>nis</i> ,	a Dagger.

Hic

## ETYMOLOGY

31

Hic <i>Quaternio, nis,</i>	the Number four.
Hic <i>Scipio, nis,</i>	a Staff.
Hic <i>Senio, nis,</i>	the Number Six.
Hic <i>Titio, nis,</i>	a Firebrand.
Hic <i>Ternio, nis,</i>	the Number three.
Hic <i>Unio, nis,</i>	a Jewel.

Except in *Do* Masculine.

Hic <i>Cardo, inis,</i>	a Hinge.
Hic <i>Cudo, nis,</i>	a Leather Cap.
Hic <i>Ordo, inis,</i>	Order.
Hic <i>Tendo, inis,</i>	a Tendon.
Hic <i>Udo, inis,</i>	a Linnen Sock.

Except in *Go* Masculine.

Hic <i>Harpago, inis,</i>	a Drag.
Hic <i>Ligo, nis,</i>	a Spade.
Hic <i>Margo, inis,</i>	the Edge.

Except in *As* Masculine.

Hic <i>As, assis,</i>	a pound Weight.
Hic <i>Adamas, antis,</i>	an Adamant.
Hic <i>Elephas, antis,</i>	an Elephant.
Hic <i>Vas, dis,</i>	a Surety.
Neu Hoc <i>Artocreas, atis,</i>	a Pye.
Hoc <i>Erisipelas, iis,</i>	St. Anthony's Fire.
Hoc <i>Vas, is,</i>	A Vess'l.

Except in *Es* Masculine.

Hic <i>Acinaces, is,</i>	a Scymitar.
Hic <i>Ames, itis,</i>	a Fowlers Staff.
Hic <i>Aries, tis,</i>	a Battering Ram.
Hic <i>Bes, beſſis,</i>	eight Ounces.
Hic <i>Cespes, itis,</i>	a Turf.

Hic

## ETYMOLOGY

Hic <i>Fomes, itis,</i>	Fuel.
Hic <i>Gurges, itis,</i>	a Gulf.
Hic <i>Lebes, tis,</i>	a Cauldron.
Hic <i>Limes, itis,</i>	a Boundary.
Hic <i>Magnes, tis,</i>	the Loadstone.
Hic <i>Merges, itis,</i>	A handful of Corn.
Hic <i>Palmes, itis,</i>	a Vine branch.
Hic <i>Paries, tis,</i>	a Wall.
Hic <i>Pes, dis,</i>	a Foot.
Hic <i>Poples, itis,</i>	the Ham of the Leg.
Hic <i>Stripes, itis,</i>	the Stock of a Tree.
Hic <i>Tapes, tis,</i>	Tapestry.
Hic <i>Termes, itis,</i>	an Olive Bough.
Hic <i>Trames, itis,</i>	a Path.
Hic <i>Trudes, itis,</i>	a Watermans Pole.
Hic <i>Tudes, itis,</i>	a Mallet.
Hoc <i>Æs, eris,</i>	Brafs.
Hoc <i>Cacoethes,</i>	an evil Custom.
Hoc <i>Hippomanes,</i>	a Lump of Flesh in a
Foals Forehead.	
Hoc <i>Nepenthes,</i>	the Herb all Grief.
Hoc <i>Panaces,</i>	the Herb all-heal.
Hic or Hæc <i>Ales, itis,</i>	a Bird.
Hic or Hæc <i>Palumbes, is,</i>	a Dove.

Except in *Is* Masculine.

Hic <i>Aqualis, is,</i>	a Waterpot.
Hic <i>Axis, is,</i>	an Axle Tree.
Hic <i>Callis, is,</i>	a beaten Path.
Hic <i>Cassis, is,</i>	a Net.
Hic <i>Cenchrus, is,</i>	a Speckled Serpent.
Hic <i>Caulis, is,</i>	a Stalk.
Hic <i>Cinis, eris,</i>	Ashes.
Hic <i>Collis, is,</i>	a Hill.

Hic

# ETYMOLOGY

33

Hic <i>Crinis, is,</i>	the Hair.
Hic <i>Cucumis, eris,</i>	a Cucumber.
Hic <i>Delphis, nis,</i>	a Dolphin.
Hic <i>Ensis, is,</i>	a Sword.
Hic <i>Fascis, is,</i>	a Bundle.
Hic <i>Follis, is,</i>	a pair of Bellows.
Hic <i>Iustis, is,</i>	a Staff.
Hic <i>Glis ris,</i>	a Rat.
Hic <i>Ignis, is,</i>	Fire.
Hic <i>Lapis, idis,</i>	a Stone.
Hic <i>Mensis, is,</i>	a Month.
Hic <i>Orbis, is,</i>	a Circle.
Hic <i>Panis, is,</i>	Bread.
Hic <i>Penis, is,</i>	the Penis.
Hic <i>Piscis, is,</i>	a Fish.
Hic <i>Postis, is,</i>	a Post.
Hic <i>Sanguis, inis,</i>	Blood.
Hic <i>Sentis, is,</i>	a Bryer
Hic <i>Torris, is,</i>	a Firebrand.
Hic <i>Vectis, is,</i>	a Leaver.
Hic <i>Vermis, is,</i>	a Worm.
Hic <i>Vomi, eris,</i>	a Ploughshare.
Hic <i>Unguis, is,</i>	a Nail.

These are Masculine or Feminine.

Hic or Hæc <i>Amnis, is,</i>	a River.
Hic or Hæc <i>Anguis,</i>	a Serpent.
Hic or Hæc <i>Canalis, is,</i>	a Canal.
Hic or Hæc <i>Clunis, is,</i>	the Buttock.
Hic or Hæc <i>Corbis, is,</i>	a Twigbasket.
Hic or Hæc <i>Finis,</i>	an End.
Hic or Hæc <i>Pulvis, eris,</i>	Dust.
Hic or Hæc <i>Retis, is,</i>	a Net.
Hic or Hæc <i>Torquis, is,</i>	a Chain.

D

Ex<sup>a</sup>

## ETIMOLOGY

Except in x Masculine.

Hic <i>Apex, icis,</i>	the Crest of a Helmet.
Hic <i>Bombyx, icis,</i>	a Silkworm.
Hic <i>Calix, cis,</i>	a Cup.
Hic <i>Calyx, cis,</i>	the Bud of a Flower.
Hic <i>Codex, icis,</i>	a Book.
Hic <i>Cortex, icis,</i>	the Bark of a Tree.
Hic <i>Fornix, cis,</i>	a Vault.
Hic <i>Frutex, icis,</i>	a Shrub.
Hic <i>Grex, gis,</i>	a Flock.
Hic <i>Latex, icis,</i>	Fresh water.
Hic <i>Coccix, gis,</i>	a Cuckow.
Hic <i>Cimex, icis,</i>	a Worm in Wood.
Hic <i>Oryx, gis,</i>	a Wild Goat.
Hic <i>Phœnix, cis,</i>	the Bird Phœnix.
Hic <i>Podex, icis,</i>	the Breech.
Hic <i>Pollex, icis,</i>	the Thumb.
Hic <i>Pulex, icis,</i>	a Flea
Hic <i>Nycticorax, cis,</i>	an Owl.
Hic <i>Onyx, cis,</i>	an Alabaster Box.
Hic <i>Ramex, icis,</i>	a Rupture.
Hic <i>Rumex, icis,</i>	the Herb Sorrel.
Hic <i>Sandyx, icis,</i>	a Red Colour.
Hic <i>Thorax, cis,</i>	the Breast.
Hic <i>Tradux, cis,</i>	a Graff.
Hic <i>Varix, cis,</i>	a Swol'n Vein.
Hic <i>Vertex, icis,</i>	the Crown of the Head.
Hic <i>Volvox, cis,</i>	a Worm in Vines.
Hic <i>Vortex, icis,</i>	a Whirpool.

These



# ETYMOLOGY

35

These are Masculine and Feminine.

Hic or Hæc <i>Calx, cis,</i>	the Heel.
Hic or Hæc <i>Culex, icis,</i>	a Gnat.
Hic or Hæc <i>Imbrex, icis,</i>	a Gutter-tile.
Hic or Hæc <i>Hystrix, icis,</i>	a Porcupine.
Hic or Hæc <i>Limax, acis,</i>	a Snail.
Hic or Hæc <i>Lynx, cis,</i>	an Ounce.
Hic or Hæc <i>Obex, icis,</i>	a Bar.
Hic or Hæc <i>Natrix, cis,</i>	a Water Snake.
Hic or Hæc <i>Perdix,</i>	a Partridge.
Hic or Hæc <i>Pumex, icis,</i>	a Pumice Stone.
Hic or Hæc <i>Silex, icis,</i>	a Flint Stone.
Hic or Hæc <i>Sardonyx, cis,</i>	a Precious Stone.

Except in S Masculine.

Hic <i>Auceps, cupis,</i>	a Fowler.
Hic <i>Dens, tis,</i>	a Tooth
Hic <i>Chalybs, is,</i>	Steel.
Hic <i>Fons, tis,</i>	a Fountain.
Hic <i>Hydrops, is,</i>	a Dropsy.
Hic <i>Gryps, phis,</i>	a Griffon.
Hic <i>Hydrops, is,</i>	a Dropsy.
Hic <i>Epops, is,</i>	a Lapwing.
Hic <i>Merops, is,</i>	a Titmoule.
Hic <i>Nefrens, dis,</i>	a Pig.
Hic <i>Mons, tis,</i>	a Mountain.
Hic <i>Oriens, tis,</i>	the East.
Hic <i>Occidens, tis,</i>	the West.
Hic <i>Profluens, tis,</i>	a Brook.
Hic <i>Quadrans, tis,</i>	a Farthing.
Hic <i>Pons, tis,</i>	a Bridge.
Hic <i>Seps, is,</i>	a Serpent.
Hic <i>Tridens, tis,</i>	a Trident.

All the Compounds of *As.*

D 2

These

## ETYMOLOGY

These are Masculine and Feminine.

Hic or Hæc	<i>Adeps, ipis,</i>	Fatnel's.
Hic or Hæc	<i>Forceps, ipis,</i>	Tongs.
Hic or Hæc	<i>Rudens, tis,</i>	a Cable.
Hic or Hæc	<i>Scrobs, is,</i>	a Ditch.
Hic or Hæc	<i>Serpens, tis,</i>	a Serpent.
Hic or Hæc	<i>Stirps, is,</i>	a Trunk of Tree.

3. Nouns of the third Declension ending in *A, L, Ar, E, I, Y, C, Men, Put, Ur, & Us,* are Neuter.

<i>A.</i>	Hoc <i>Dogma, tis,</i>	an Opinion.
	Hoc <i>Ænigma, tis,</i>	a Riddle.
<i>L.</i>	Hoc <i>Mel, lis,</i>	Honey.
	Hoc <i>Væctigal, is,</i>	Tribute.
<i>Ar.</i>	Hoc <i>Calcar, is,</i>	a Spur.
	Hoc <i>Laquear, is,</i>	a Roof.
<i>E.</i>	Hoc <i>Rete, is,</i>	a Net.
	Hoc <i>Altare, is,</i>	an Altar.
<i>I.</i>	Hoc <i>Sinapi, is,</i>	Mustard.
	Hoc <i>Hydromeli, is,</i>	Mede.
<i>Y</i>	Hoc <i>Misy,</i>	Vitriol.
	Hoc <i>Moly,</i>	an Herb.
<i>C.</i>	Hoc <i>Lac, etis,</i>	Milk.
<i>N.</i>	Hoc <i>Nomen, inis,</i>	a Name.
	Hoc <i>Carmen, inis,</i>	a Poem.
<i>Put</i>	Hoc <i>Caput, itis,</i>	the Head.
<i>Ur.</i>	Hoc <i>Murmur, is,</i>	a Murmur.
	Hoc <i>Fulgur, is,</i>	Lightning.
<i>Us,</i>	Hoc <i>Genus, eris,</i>	a Kind.
	Hoc <i>Munus, eris,</i>	a Gift.
	Hoc <i>Corpus, oris,</i>	a Body.
	Hoc <i>Tempus, oris,</i>	Time.

# ETYMOLOGY

37

Except in *L* Masculine.

Hic *Sal*, *is*, Salt.

*L.* Hic *Sol*, *is*, the Sun.

Hic *Mugil*, *is*, a Mullet-fish.

*Men.* Hic *Hymen*, *is*, a Marriage Song.

Hic *Fur*, *is*, a Thief.

*Ur.* Hic *Furfur*, *is*, Bran.

Hic *Turtur*, *is*, a Turtle Dove.

Hic *Vultur*, *is*, a Vulture.

Hic *Lar*, *is*, the Fire Side.

*Ar.* Hic *Salar*, *is*, a Trout.

Hæc *Lucar*, *is*, a Bird.

Hæc *Baccar*, *is*, an Herb.

Except in *Us* Masculine and Feminine.

Hic *Lepus*, *oris*, a Hare.

Hic *Tripus*, *odis*, a Tripode.

Hic *Polipus*, *odis*, a Fish with many Feet.

Hic *Chitropus*, *odis*, a Brand Iron.

Hic or Hæc *Mus*, *ris*, a Mouse.

Hic or Hæc *Grus*, *is*, a Crane.

Hic or Hæc *Sus*, *is*, a Pig.

Hæc *Laus*, *dis*, Praise.

Hæc *Fraus*, *dis*, Fraud.

Hæc *Lagopus*, *odis*, a Bird.

Hæc *Incus*, *dis*, an Anvil.

Hæc *Iuventus*, *tis*, Youth.

Hæc *Palus*, *dis*, a Morass.

Hæc *Pecus*, *dis*, Cattle.

Hæc *Salus*, *tis*, Health.

D 3

Hæc

## ETYMOLOGY

Hæc <i>Senectus</i> , <i>tis</i> ,	Old Age.
Hæc <i>Subscus</i> , <i>dis</i> ,	a Dove-tail.
Hæc <i>Tellus</i> , <i>ris</i> ,	the Earth.
Hæc <i>Virtus</i> , <i>tis</i> ,	Virtue.

Nouns of the fourth Declension are Masculine.

Hic *Gradus*, *us*, a Step.

Hic *Currus*, *us*, a Chariot.

Except these Feminine.

Hæc *Acus*, *us*, a Needle.

Hæc *Domus*, *us*, a House.

Hæc *Idus*, *uum*, the Ides.

Hæc *Manus*, *us*, the Hand.

Hæc *Porticus*, *us*, a Gallery.

Hæc *Tribus*, *us*, a Tribe.

Hæc *Quercus*, *us*, an Oak.

Hæc *Quinquatrus*, a Feast to Minerva.

All in *U* are Neuter. as

Hoc *Cornu*, a Horn.

Hoc *Genu*, the Knee.

Hoc *Gelu*, Frost.

Hoc *Veru*, a Spit.

Nouns of the Fifth are Feminine.

Hæc *Acies*, *ei*, an Army.

Hæc *Facies*, *ei*, a Face.

Hæc *Res*, *ei*, a Thing.

Except these two.

Hic or Hæc *Dies*, *ei*, a Day.

Hic *Meridies*, *ei*, Noon.

What

Whatever does not to these Rules agree,  
By these Exceptions you will plainly see.

OF HETEROCLITE NOUNS.

**H**ETEROCLITE are such Nouns as differ from the Common Way of declining, by being either Defective, Variant or Redundant.

Some are deficient in Number, some in Case.

NOUNS Defective in Number.

Nouns of the Singular Number only, are all proper Names, most Names of things sold by Weight or Measure, most Names of Herbs, Liquors, Metals, Virtues, Vices, Arts, and abstract Nouns, as *Hector, Italia, Saccharum, Triticum, Apium, Lac, Argentum, Jusitia, Luxus, Musica, Magnitudo, & Juventus.*

And also these of the Masculine; *Aer, Aether, Finus, Hesperus, Limus, Mundus*, the Ornaments of a Woman, *Musculus, Nemo, Meridies, Penus, Pontus, Sanguis & Viscus.*

These of the Feminine; *Argilla, Glarea, Humus, Juventa, Labes, Lues, Plebs, Pubes, Salus, Senectus, Sitis, Suppellex, Tabes, Venia.*

Also these of the Neuter; *Album, Barathrum, Cœnum, Crocum, Diluculum, Ebur, Gelu, Glastrum, Gluten, Glutinum, Fel, Fœnum, Gypsum Hepar, Hilum, Jubar, Lardum, Lutum, Mane, Nectar, Nil, Nihil, Nitrum, Omasum, Opium, Pelagus, Penum, Pus, Jusitium, Sal, Salum, Tabulum, Sinapi, Senium, Tabum,*



*Ver, Vetrinum, Virus, Viscum, Vitrum, Vulgus, Zingiber.*

Nouns of the Plural only, are the Names of Feasts; as, *Bacchanalia, Quinquatria*; Many Names of Books, as, *Bucolica, Georgica*; Names of Games, as, *Apollinares, Olympia*; Many Names of Cities, as, *Athenæ, Theba, Philippi*. All Cardinal Numbers, except *Unus, & Mille*; to which may be added, *pauci, plerique & ambo*.

These also of the Masculine want the Singular, *Antes, Cancelli, Fasces, Fasti, Manes, Minores, Majores, Codicilli, Lemures, Natales, Penates, Pugillares, Liberi, Poster, Inferi, Superi*.

These of the Feminine; *Apinæ, Calendæ, Cule, Cunæ, Diræ, Divitiæ, Excubiæ, Exequiæ, Exquiliæ, Evuviæ, Fraces, Feriæ, Gemoniæ, Grates, Idus, Induviæ, Induvia, Inferiæ, Insidiæ, Lactes, Minæ, Manubiæ, Nonæ, Nugæ, Nundinæ, Nuptiæ, Geræ, Opes, Palpebræ, Phaleræ, Primitiæ, Quinquatrus, Quisquiliæ, Plage, Reliquiæ, Salinæ, Scalæ, Scopæ, Tenebræ, Tricæ, Thermæ, Vergiliæ, Vindiciæ, Vires. Allo Angustiæ, Assaniæ, Facetiæ, Furiæ, Lapidinæ, Minutiæ, Officiæ, Parietinæ, Secundæ, Valvæ.*

These of the Neuter; *Acta, Arma, Bellaria, Bona, Brevia, Castra, Canabula, Comitia, Crepundia, Eta, Flabra, Fraga, Gargara, Ilia, Iusta, Lamenta, Lautia, Menta, Magalia, Multitia, Munia, Lustra, Orgia, Palaria, Parentalia, Præbia, Præcordia, Principia, Paraph*

*pherna, Rapacia, Repotia, Rostra, Scruta, Sponsalia, Talaria, Tesqua, Transtra.*

NOUNS Defective in Case are

1. **A**PTOTES, which have but one ending for every Case; viz. All Nouns in *u*. as *Genu*; almost all Nouns in *i*, as *Gummi*; the Names of Letters, as *Alpha, Beta*; Foreign Names, as *Job, Jerusalem*; and all Nouns of Number from 4 to 100. Beside these, *Cepe, Frit, Git, Gausape, Glos, Nihil, Nil, Pondo, Mille, Tempe*: to which add these Adjectives, *damnas, nequam, parum, tot, quot, aliquot, totidem, quotquot, quocunque*.
2. **MONOPTOTES**, which have but one Case. as *Inquies, Exspes, potis, pote, Dicis, Nauci, ergo, Inficias, Incita, Incitas, gratiis, ingratiis, Ambage, compede, fauce, Algu, Pecu, Noctu, diu, interdiu, fortuitu, jussu, injussu, admonitu, persuasu, promptu, relatu*, with many more in *u*.
3. **DIPTOTES**, which have but two Cases; as *Neceffe & Neceffum, astu, Hir, Instar, Volupe*, Nom. & Acc. Sing. *Vesper, Vespere*; *Sirempis, Sirempse*; Nom. & Abl. Sing. *Impetis, Impete*; *Spontis, Sponte*; *Verberis, Verbere*; Gen. & Abl. Sing. *Repetundarum, Repetundis*; Gen. & Abl. Plur. *Suppetiæ, Suppetias*; *Inferiæ, Inferias*; *Foris, Foras*.
4. **TRIPTOTES**, which have three Cases; as *Tantundem, tantidem*, N. A. G. Sing. *fas, nefas, Melos, Epos, Cacoethes, Hippomanes, Nepenthes*, N. A. V. Sing. *Grates, Cete*, N. A. V. Plural. *Dica, dicam, dicas*; *Mactus, Macte, Mact-*

*Maſti*; *preci*, *precem*, *prece*; *Sordis*, *sordem*, *sorde*; *Vicis*, *vicem*, *vice*.

**N**OUNS Variant are ſuch as have different Declenſions or Genders.

Theſe have different Declenſions; *Vas*, *vaſis*, of the 3d. *Vaſa*, *vaſorum*, of the 2d. *Jugerum*, *Jugeri*, of the 2d. *Jugera*, *Jugerum*, *Jugeri-bus*, of the 3d. *Domus*, *Domi*, of the 2d. *Domus*, *Domus*, of the 4th.

Theſe are HETEROGENEOUS, or of different Genders.

Maſculine in the Sing. Neuter in the Plural. *Dindymus*, *Pangæus*, *Avernus*, *Tenarus*, *Maſſicus*, *Menalus*, *Taygetus*, *Tartarus*, & *Iſmarus*. Plural, *Dindyma*, *Pangæa*, *Averna*, *Tenara*, *Maſſica*, *Menala*, *Taygeta*, *Tartara*, *Iſmara*. N. B. Theſe have ſometimes *loca* joined with them.

Maſculine in the Sing. Neuter in the Plural. *Focus*, *joci*, & *joca*; *Locus*, *Loci* & *Loca*; *Sibilus*, *Sibili* & *Sibila*;

Feminine in the Singular, Neuter in the Plural. *Carbaſus*, *Carbaſa*; *Pergamus*, *Pergama*.

Neuter in the Singular, Maſculine in the Plural. *Elyſium*, *Elyſii*; *Cælum*, *Cæli*; *Argos*, *Argi*.

Neuter in the Singular, Maſculine or Neuter in the Plural. *Raſtrum*, *Raſtri* & *Raſtra*; *Frænum*, *fræni* & *fræna*.

Neuter in the Singular, Feminine in the Plural. *Delicium*, *Deliciæ*; *Epulum*, *Epulæ*;  
Nun-

*Nundinum, Nundinæ; Balneum, Balneæ & Balnea.*

**N**OUNS Redundant may be reduced to eight Sorts.

1. Some redundant only in the Nom. Sing — *Arbor & Arbor.*
2. Some only in Declension. — *Laurus, Lauri & Laurus.*
3. Some only in Gender. — *Hic or Hæc Dies.*
4. Some in Declension and ending too, as *Materia, Materie, Materies, Materiei.*
5. Some in ending and Gender. — *Tonitrus & Tonitru.*
6. Some in Declension and Gender. — *Penus, Peni & Penus, Mas. and Fem. Penus, Penoris, Neuter.*
7. Some in ending, Declension and Gender. — *Æther, ætheris, Æthra, Æthræ.*
8. Some in the same Declension have different Endings in the Oblique Cases. — *Tigris, tigridis & tigris, tigrides & tigres.* To which might be added some Nouns, that under the same Signification, have different Numbers; *Fidena, Fidenæ; Fidenæ, Fidenarum.*

### The Manner of Declining Adjectives.

**T**HERE are three Sorts of Adjectives: Some have 3 Endings in the Nominative, some 2, others but one.

When an Adjective has 3 Endings, the first  
may

may be joined to a Substantive of the Masculine Gender; the 2d. to a Substantive of the Feminine; the 3d. to a Substantive of the Neuter. as *Bonus Vir*, a good Man; *Bona Penna*, a good Pen; *Bonum Scalpellum*, a good Penknife.

When an Adjective has two Endings, the first is Masculine and Feminine; the Second only Neuter. as, *Mollis Calamus*, a Soft Quill; *Mollis Penna*, a Soft Pen; *Molle Ovum*, a Soft Egg.

An Adjective of one Ending may be joined to Substantives of all Genders, as *Felix Vir*, a happy Man; *felix Mulier*, a happy Woman; *felix Regnum*, a happy Kingdom.

There are three ways of declining Adjectives: Those that have 3 Endings are declined like Substantives of the first and second Declension.

	Sing.		
	M	F	N
N. Bonus,		<i>bona</i> ,	<i>bonum</i> .
G. Boni,		<i>bonæ</i> ,	<i>boni</i> .
D. Bono,		<i>bonæ</i> ,	<i>bono</i> .
Ac. Bonum,		<i>bonam</i> ,	<i>bonum</i> .
V. Bone,		<i>bona</i> ,	<i>bonum</i> .
Ab Bono,		<i>bona</i> ,	<i>bono</i> .

	Plural.		
	M	F	F.
N. Boni,		<i>bonæ</i> ,	<i>bona</i> .
G. Bonorum.		<i>bonarum</i> ,	<i>bonorum</i> .
D Bonis.			
Ac. Bonos,		<i>bonas</i> ,	<i>bona</i> .
V. Boni,		<i>bonæ</i> ,	<i>bona</i> .
Ab. Bonis.			



# ETYMOLOGI

45

All Adjectives in *us*, are thus declined, except *Vetus, veteris*, and these eight following, *Ullus, alius, unus, totus, solus, alter, uter* and *neuter*; which have the Genitive in *ius*, and the Dative in *i*. *Alius*, makes in the Neuter *Aliud*.

	Sing.		
	M.	F.	N.
N.	Ullus,	ulla,	illum.
G.	Ullius.		
D.	Ulli.		
Acc.	Ullum,	ullam,	illum.
V.	—		
Ab.	Ullō,	ulla,	ullo.

	Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.
N.	Ulli,	ulle,	ulla.
G.	Ullorum,	ullarum,	ullorum.
D.	Ullis.		
Ac.	Ullōs,	ullas,	ulla.
V.	—		
Ab.	Ullis.		

Nouns in *Er* & *Ur* are declined thus.

N *Niger, Nigra, Nigrum*, G. *Nigri, Nigræ, Nigri*. Sc. N. *Liber, Libera, Liberum*, G. *Liberi, Libere, Liberi*. Sc. N. *Satur, Saturæ, Saturum*, G. *Saturi, Saturæ, Saturi*. Sc.

Am

*Ambo*, both, & *Duo*, two, are thus declined.

	Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>Ambo</i> ,	<i>ambæ</i> ,	<i>ambo</i> .
G.	<i>Amborum</i> ,	<i>ambarum</i> ,	<i>amborum</i> .
D.	<i>Ambobus</i> ,	<i>ambabus</i> ,	<i>ambobus</i> .
Ac.	<i>Ambos</i> ,	<i>ambas</i> ,	<i>ambo</i> .
V.	<i>Ambo</i> ,	<i>ambæ</i> ,	<i>ambo</i> .
Ab.	<i>Ambobus</i> ,	<i>ambabus</i> ,	<i>ambobus</i> .

	Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>Duo</i> ,	<i>duæ</i> ,	<i>duo</i> .
G.	<i>Duorum</i> ,	<i>duarum</i> ,	<i>duorum</i> .
D.	<i>Duobus</i> ,	<i>duabus</i> ,	<i>duobus</i> .
Ac.	<i>Duos</i> ,	<i>duas</i> ,	<i>duo</i> .
V.	<i>Duo</i> ,	<i>duæ</i> ,	<i>duo</i> .
Ab.	<i>Duobus</i> ,	<i>duabus</i> ,	<i>duobus</i> .

Adjectives of two Endings are declined like  
Substantives of the third Declension. thus

	Sing.	
	M. F.	N.
N.	<i>Mollis</i> ,	& <i>molle</i> .
G.	<i>Mollis</i> .	
D.	<i>Molli</i> .	
Ac.	<i>Mollem</i> ,	& <i>molle</i> .
V.	<i>Mollis</i> ,	& <i>molle</i> .
Ab.	<i>Molli</i> .	

Plu-

Plural.

M. F. N.

N. *Molles, & mollia.*

G. *Mollium.*

D. *Mollibus.*

Ac. *Molles, & mollia.*

V. *Molles, & mollia.*

Ab. *Mollibus.*

All Adjectives in *Is*, make the Ablative Singular in *i*, and the Genitive Plural in *ium*. In like manner are declined all Nouns of the Comparative Degree. Except that they make in the Ablative Singular *e* or *i*; in the Genitive plural *um*.

Sing.

M. F. N.

N. *Durior, & durius.*

G. *Durioris.*

D. *Duriori.*

Ac. *Duriorem, & durius.*

V. *Durior, & durius.*

Ab. *Duriore, & duriori.*

Plural.

M. F. N.

N. *Duriores, & duriora.*

G. *Duriorum.*

D. *Durioribus.*

Ac. *Duriores, & duriora.*

V. *Duriores, & duriora.*

Ab. *Durioribus.*

Also Adjectives in *er*, which have *is*, in the Feminine. as, *acer, acris, acre, ceber, cebris, celebre.*

Adjectives of one Ending are declined like Substantives of the third Declension. thus

## Sing.

N.	<i>Felix.</i>
G.	<i>Felici.</i>
D.	<i>Felici,</i>
Ac.	<i>Felicem, &amp; felix.</i>
V.	<i>Felix.</i>
Ab.	<i>Felice, or felici.</i>

## Plural.

N.	<i>Felices, &amp; felicia.</i>
G.	<i>Felicium.</i>
D.	<i>Felicibus.</i>
Ac.	<i>Felices, &amp; felicia.</i>
V.	<i>Felices &amp; felicia.</i>
Ab.	<i>Felicibus.</i>

Obf. All Participles of the present Tense are thus declined, as, *Amans, amantis, docens, docentis &c.* And Adjectives in *as, es, x, ar, or, os, & s* with a Consonant before it; as *Arpinas, dives, ferax, par, memor, Impos & prudens.* Also some in *Er*; as *pauper, puber, degener, uber.* *Plus, plaris*, is Neuter only in the Singular, but the Plural is perfect.

Of the Comparifon of Adjectives.

**A**DJECTIVES, which fignify the Nature or Quality of the Subftantive, have three Degrees of Signification, called three Degrees of Comparifon.

There are three Degrees of Comparifon, the Pofitive, Comparative, and the Superlative; as *Durus*, hard, *Durior*, harder, *Duriffimus*, hard-  
eft.

The Pofitive is the Adjective itfelf.

In Englifh the Comparative is form'd from the Pofitive by adding *Er*, to it, or putting *more*, before it; as *hard*, *harder*, *more hard*.

The Superlative is formed from the Pofitive by adding *eft*, to it, or putting *moft*, or *very*, before it; as *hardeft*, *moft hard*, *very hard*: But if the Pofitive end in *e*, *e* is not doubled, as *wife*, *wifer*, *wifeft*.

---

N. B. Tho' there are indeed but two Degrees of Comparifon, the Pofitive being properly no Degree at all, but the foundation of the other two; yet notwithstanding, as the Nominative is reckon'd the firft of the Cafes, tho' it does not fall from any other Word, as the Latin Word *Cafus* imports; fo for that reafon, I chofe not to recede from the ufual Number, which Grammarians have fo long fince eftablifhed.



In Latin the Comparative is form'd from the first Case of the Positive that ends in *i*, by adding thereto *or*, *Mal* & *Fem. us*, *Neuter. as* *Durus, durī, durior, durius: Mollis, molli, mollior, mollius.*

The Superlative is formed from the same Case of the Positive, by adding thereto *s* and *simus*; as of *Durus, durī, durissimus*; of *Mollis, molli, mollissimus.*

When the Positive ends in *er*, the Comparative is regular, but the Superlative is made by adding *rimus* to it; as *Niger, nigrior, nigerimus.* So *Nuper —us, nuperrimus*; *Vetus, veterrimus*; *Maturus, Maturrimus & Maturissimus.*

These five Nouns ending in *lis*, make the Superlative by Changing *is*, into *limus*, *Facilis, Gracilis, Humilis, Similis, and Imbecillis*; as *Facilis, facillimus: Imbecillis*, has also *imbecillissimus.*

Adjectives derived of *Dico, Volo, Facio & Loquor*, when compared, make the Comparative to end in *entior*, the Superlative *entissimus*; as *Maledicus, Benevolus, Munificus, Magniloquus, entior, entissimus.* Except *Mirificus, Mirificissimus.*

When a Vowel comes before *us*, as in *Arduus, Igneus*, the Comparative is made by *magis*; and the Superlative by *admodum, valde* or *maxime*; as *arduus, magis, arduus; valde, admodum, or maxime, arduus.*

These

These Adjectives are compared irregular.

*Bonus, melior, optimus*, Good, better, best.  
*Malus, pejor, pessimus*, Bad, worse,  
 worst.

*Magnus, major, maximus*, Great, greater,  
 greatest.

*Parvus, minor, minimus*, Little, lesser, least  
*Multus, plus, N. plurimus*, Much, more, most.

To these add,

*Superus*, Superior, *Supremus*, *Summus*.

*Inferus*, Interior, *Infinus*.

*Posterus*, Posterior, *Postremus*.

*Nequam*, Nequior, *Nequissimus*.

*Exterus*, Exterior, *Extimus*, *extremus*.

*Citra*, *Citerior*, *Citimus*.

*Intra*, *Interior*, *Intimus*.

*Ultra*, *Uterior*, *Ultimus*.

*Pridem*, *prior*, *primus*.

*Prope*, *proprior*, *proximus*.

Obs. 1. These are defective in Comparison. Participles in *Dus*, & *Rus*, and Adjectives in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus*, *ivus*, *orus*, *icus* with the Penultima short, & D-minutives; as *Amandus*, *Amaturus*, *Ludibundus*, *Legitimus*, *Matutinus*, *Fugitivus*, *Canorus*, *Modicus*, *Tenellus*; Besides these, *Pestiferus*, *mirus*, *Claudus*, *memor* & *almus*, *Deliris*, *rudis*, *vulgaris*, *lacer*, *Calvus*, *Sospes*, *egenus*, with many others mentioned by Mr. Johnson. Gram. Com. p. 219.

2. Some seem to want the Positive; as *oryor*, *ocissimus*; *Deterior*, *detrerrimus*.

E 2

3. Some

3. Some want the Comparative; as *Bellus*, *consultus*, *invictus*, *invitus*, *inclutus*, *meritus*, *novus*, *persuassus*, *sacer*, *sacerrimus*, *nuper*, *nuperrimus*.

4. Some want the Superlative; as *Adolescens*, *Communis*, *declivis*, *dexter*, *sinister*, *longinquus*, *optimus*, *Juvenis*, *Junior*, *senex*, *senior*, *proclivis*, *propinquus*; Most in *bilis*, as *tolerabilis*, *tolerabilior*; *flebilis*, *flebilior*. In *ilis*, as *Juvenilis*, *Civilis*; In *alis*, as *Capitalis*, *Regalis*.

5. Some have the Comparative only; as *Anterior*, *Sequior*, *Satior*; and such as these formed from Substantives, *Neronior*, *Pœnior*.

6. Such as these *Affiduior*, *Strenuior*, *Piissimus*, *Ipsissimus*, *Tuissimus*, *Multiissimus*, are sometimes, but seldom found.

7. Sometimes the Superlative is considered as a Positive, and a new formation made from it; as *Extremus*, *Extremissimus*; *Minimissimus*, *Pessimissimus*, *Proximior*.

8. As *magis*, is added to the Comparative by a Pleonasm, so *maxime* and *quam* are sometimes added to the Superlative, as *maxime humanissimi*, *quam maximum numerum*.

### OF a PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is a Word used for and supplies the Place of a Noun. As in this Sentence, *Alexander was the Son of Philip; He conquered*

Da-

## ETYMOLOGY

53

*Darius, King of Persia*: Instead of using the Noun *Alexander*, we use the Pronoun *He*.

There are eighteen simple Pronouns ; where-  
of ten are Primitive, eight Derivative.

The Primitive are these *Ego, Tu, Sui, Ille, Ip-  
se, Iste, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui*. These are Deriva-  
tive, *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, ves-  
tras, & Cujas*.

These three *Ego, Tu, Sui*, are called Substan-  
tives, and are of the same Gender, as the Noun  
they are used for ; as *Ego Jupiter*, M. *Tu  
Juno*, F. The rest are Adjectives.

They are thus declined.

Sing.

N.	<i>Ego</i> ,	I.
G.	<i>Mei</i> ,	of me.
D.	<i>Mibi</i> ,	to me.
Ac.	<i>Me</i> ,	me.
V.	—	
Ab.	<i>Me</i> ,	by me.

Plural.

N.	<i>Nos</i> ,	we.
G.	<i>Nostrum, i</i> ,	of us.
D.	<i>Nobis</i> ,	to us.
Ac.	<i>Nos</i> ,	us.
V.	—	
Ab.	<i>Nobis</i> ,	by us.

E3

Singu-

## ETYMOLOGY

Sing.

N.	<i>Tu,</i>	Thou or you.
G.	<i>Tui,</i>	of thee.
D.	<i>Tibi,</i>	to thee.
Ac.	<i>Te,</i>	thee.
V.	<i>Tu,</i>	o Thou.
Ab.	<i>Te,</i>	by thee.

Plural.

N.	<i>Vos,</i>	ye or you.
G.	<i>Vestrum,</i>	of you.
D.	<i>Vobis,</i>	to you.
Ac.	<i>Vos,</i>	you.
V.	<i>Vos,</i>	o you.
Ab.	<i>Vobis,</i>	by you.

Sing.

·N—

G.	<i>Sui,</i>	of Himself.
D.	<i>Sibi,</i>	to Himself.
Ac.	<i>Se,</i>	Himself.
Ab.	<i>Se,</i>	by Himself.

Plural.

N.	—	
G.	<i>Sui,</i>	of Themselves.
D.	<i>Sibi,</i>	to Themselves.
Ac.	<i>Se,</i>	Themselves.
Ab.	<i>Se,</i>	by Themselves.



*Ille*, He, She, that or It.

Sing.

N.	<i>Ille, illa, illud,</i>	He, &c.
G.	<i>Illius,</i>	of him.
D.	<i>Illi,</i>	to him.
Ac.	<i>Illum, illam, illud.</i>	him.
V.	<i>Ille, illa, illud.</i>	
Ab.	<i>Illo, illa, illo,</i>	by him.

Plural.

N.	<i>Illi, illæ, illa,</i>	They, &c.
G.	<i>Illorum, illarum, illorum,</i>	of them.
D.	<i>Illis,</i>	to them.
Ac.	<i>Illos, illas, illa,</i>	them.
V.	<i>Illi, illæ, illa,</i>	—
Ab.	<i>Illis,</i>	by them.

*Ipse, a, um,* He him self, She herself, itself.  
and *Iste, a, ud,* He, She, that, are declined as  
*Ille*, except that *Ipse* makes *ipsum* in the Nom.  
Acc. and Voc. Sing. Neut.

Sing.

N.	<i>Hic, Hæc, Hoc,</i>	This.
G.	<i>Hujus,</i>	of this.
D.	<i>Huic,</i>	to this.
Ac.	<i>Hunc, Hanc, Hoc,</i>	this.
V.	—	
Ab.	<i>Hoc, Hac, Hoc,</i>	by this.

## Plural.

N.	<i>Hi,</i>	<i>hæ,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	These.
G.	<i>Horum,</i>	<i>harum,</i>	<i>horum,</i>	of these.
D.	<i>His,</i>			to these.
Ac.	<i>Hos,</i>	<i>has,</i>	<i>hec,</i>	these.
V.	—			
Ab.	<i>His,</i>			by these.

## Sing.

N.	<i>Is,</i>	<i>ea,</i>	<i>id,</i>	That.
G.	<i>Ejus,</i>			of that.
D.	<i>Ei,</i>			to that.
Ac.	<i>Eum,</i>	<i>eam,</i>	<i>id,</i>	That.
V.	—			
Ab.	<i>Eo,</i>	<i>ea,</i>	<i>eo,</i>	by that.

## Plural.

N.	<i>Ii,</i>	<i>eæ,</i>	<i>ea,</i>	Those.
G.	<i>Eorum,</i>	<i>earum,</i>	<i>eorum,</i>	of those.
D.	<i>Iis,</i>	or	<i>eis,</i>	to those.
Ac.	<i>Eos,</i>	<i>eas,</i>	<i>ea,</i>	those.
V.	—			
Ab.	<i>Iis,</i>	or	<i>eis,</i>	by those.

## Sing.

N.	<i>Qui,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>	<i>quod,</i>	who or which.
G.	<i>Cujus,</i>			whose or of whom.
D.	<i>Cui,</i>			to whom.
Ac.	<i>Quem,</i>	<i>quam,</i>	<i>quod,</i>	whom.
V.	—			
Ab.	<i>Quo,</i>	<i>qua,</i>	<i>quo,</i>	by whom.

Plur

Plural.			
N.	<i>Qui,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>	who or which.
G.	<i>Quorum,</i>	<i>quarum,</i>	<i>quorum,</i> of whom.
D.	<i>Quibus,</i>	or <i>queis,</i>	to whom.
Ac.	<i>Quos</i>	<i>quas,</i>	whom.
V.	—	—	—
Ab.	<i>Quibus,</i>	or <i>queis,</i>	by whom.

*Quis, quæ, quid,* is declined like *Qui*: But its Compounds *Aliquis, Siquis, Nequis, Numquis,* instead of *quæ* have always *qua*.

*Meus, tuus, suus, noster, & vester,* are declined like *bonus*, and *Niger*; *Nostras, Vestras, & Cujas, tis,* like *Felix*.

We seldom have occasion to use any Pronouns in the Voc. Except *Tu, Meus, Noster & Vester*. *Meus*, makes *mi*.

The Relative *Qui*, has *qui*, also in the Ablative Singular, which is of all Genders and Numbers.

*Quis*, and *qui* are often compounded, as *Quinam, Quispiam, Quisque, Quisquis, quicquid,* which are declined like *Quis*; also *Aliquis, Ecquis, Siquis, Nequis, Numquis, Unusquisque*.

The Compounds of *Qui*, are *Quidam, Quivis, Quinam, Quilibet, Quicunque*, which are declined like *Qui*, except that *Quidam*, changes *m* into *n*, as *quendam, quandam, quorundam, &c.*

*Idem, eadem, idem,* is compounded of *Is, ea, id & dem*, and declined like it, except that *m* be-

before *dem*, is always changed into *n*, as *eundem*, *eandem*, *eorundem*, *earundem*.

Some reckon among Compound Pronouns, *Ege*, *Tu*, *Sui*, with *Ipse*; but in the best Books they are generally read sepeparate; which seems necessary, because they are of different Cases, as *Te-ipse*, *Se-ipse*.

Most of the other Compounds are only to be found in certain Cases and Geniters; as of *Iste*, & *Hic* is compounded N. *Isthic*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Ac. *Isthun*, *isthanc*, *Isthoc*, or *isthuc*. Ab. *Isthec*, *Istac*, *Isthoc*. N. A. P. *Isthæ*

Of *Ecce* and *Is*, is compounded *Eccum*, *eccam*, *eccos*, *eccas*. Plaut. and from *Ecce* & *ille*, *ellum*, *ellam*, *ellos*, *ellas*.

Of *Modus*, and *is*, *hic*, *iste* & *quis*, are compounded these Genitives, *Ejusmodi*, *hujusmodi*, *istiusmodi* & *Cujusmodi*; and Sometime with the Syllable *ce* put in the middle, as *hujuscemodi*.

These Ablatives are compounded with *cum*, *Me-cum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quicum*, *quocum*, *quibuscum*.

To these add some Pronouns compounded with Syllabical Adjections, *met*, *te*, *ce*, *pre*, *cine*, to make their Signification more pointed and Emphatical, as *Egomet*, *tute*, *hujusce*, *meapte*, *biccine*.

Obi. That *Ille* shews Respect, *Iste* contempt; as, *Alexander ille magnus*, Alexander the Great; *Tarquinius iste Superbus*, Tarquin the Proud.

*Ille* most commonly signifies the former of two Substantives, *Hic* the latter.

Of the VERB

A VERB is the chief word in every Sentence, signifying the Acting, Suffering or Being of a Thing, as *Deus videt omnia*, God sees all Things; In which Sentence *Videt* is the chief word, without which there would be no Sense.

There are 3 Sorts of Verbs, Active, Passive & Neuter.

1. A Verb Active ends in *O*, and signifies Doing; as *Amo*, I Love.
2. A Verb Passive ends in *Or*, and signifies Suffering, or Something that is done or offer'd to the Noun; as *Deus Laudatur*, God is prais'd.
3. A Verb Neuter ends in *O* or *M*, and signifies Inaction or Being; as *Sedeo*, I Sit, *Sum*, I am

Observe. There are some Verbs in *Or*, which have an Active Signification, and are called by some Deponent, as *Loquor*, I speak; *Sequor*, I follow.

Some in *Or*, which sometimes have an Active, sometimes a Passive Signification, and are called by some Common; as *Criminor*, I accuse; *Criminor*, I am accused.

There are also some Verbs in *O*, which have a Passive Signification, as *vapulo*, I am beaten; *Exulo*, I am Banished; *Fio*, I am made or done.



## Of the MOODS of VERBS.

**M**OOD signifies the Manner of a Verbsignifying, or affirming.

There are four Moods, the Indicative, Imperative, Subjunctive, & Infinitive.

The Indicative Mood affirms, denies, or asks a Question, as *Scribe*, I write ; *non Scribis*, you do not write ; *Cur non Scribis*, why dont you write ?

The Imperative commands, exhorts, and entreats ; as *Scribe puer*, write Boy ; *Scribamus*, Let us write ; *Audi Deus*, hear o God.

The Subjunctive depends upon another Verb in the same Sentence, and does not make the Sentence compleat of itself ; as *Orat, ut ad se venias* ; She begs, that you wou'd come to her.

This Mood is divided into three, the Optative, Potential and Subjunctive ; but because the Endings in Latin are the same, they are all comprehended under one.

It is call'd Optative, when a word importing a wish, goes before it ; as, *Utinam, o si me doceas*, o that you would teach me ! The Potential signifies power, possibility, wish and Duty, and has the Signs *may, can, might, wou'd and shou'd* ; as, *Anem*, I may or can love ; *ut Scribam*, that I may write.

The Infinitive expresses the general Signification of the Verb, without Number or Person, or Nominative Case before it. *To* is a sign of this Mood, but sometimes it is omitted ; as, *Cupio dis-*

*discere*, I desire to learn ; *Malo ludere*, I had rather play.

Of the TENSES.

**T**ENSE signifies the Time of a Verbs Affirmation.

In Nature there are but 3 Tenses, the Present, the Perfect and the Future; but the Perfect is expressed three different Ways, so that there are in Grammar five Tenses. The Present, Preterimperfect, Preterperfect, Preterpluperfect and Future Tense.

The Present Tense signifies something that is now doing; as *Scribo*, I write, or am now writing.

The Imperfect expresses a thing begun, but not finished; as *Condebat templum*, She was building a Temple.

It also signifies Custom, or practice ; as, *Cives cum civibus de virtute certabant*. Citizens used to contend with Citizens, who should be the bravest. *Sal. Assidue veniebat*, He used to come constantly ; Or was constantly coming. *Virg.*

The Perfect Tense signifies the Time perfectly past, and has most commonly the sign *have*; as *Scripsi*, I have writ.

The Pluperfect Tense signifies a Time that was past, before another Time, that is also past; as, *Scripseram Literas antequam venisti*, I had writ the Letter before you came. It has most commonly the Sign *had*.

The

The Future Tense expresses the Time to come, with the Sign *shall* or *will*; as, *Scribam*, I shall or will write.

These Auxilliary or helping Verbs are called the English Signs of Tenses.

In the Active Voice, Indicative Mood.

P. I do, thou doest, he doeth or does; we do, ye do, they do.

Imp. I did, thou didst, he did; we did, ye did, they did.

Per. I have, thou hast, he hath; we have, ye have, they have.

Plup. I had, thou hadst, he had; we had, ye had, they had.

Fut. I shall or will, thou shalt or wilt, he shall or will; we shall or will, ye shall or will, they shall or will.

Imper. Thou, let him; let us, ye, let them.

Subj. P. I may or can, thou mayest or canst, he may or can &c.

Imp. I might, cou'd, wou'd & shou'd &c.

Per. I might, cou'd, wou'd & shou'd have &c.

Plup. I had, or might have &c.

Fut. I shall have, thou shalt have, he shall have &c.

In the Passive Voice.

Ind. P. I am, thou art, he is; we are, ye are, they are.

Imp. I was, thou wast, he was; we were, ye were, they were.

Per-

- Perf. I have been, thou hast been, he hath been; we have been, ye have been, they have been.
- Plup. I had been, thou hadst been, he had been; we had been, ye had been, they had been.
- Fut. I shall or will be, thou shalt or wilt be, he shall or will be; we shall or will be, ye shall or will be, they shall or will be.
- Imper. Be thou, let him be; let us be, b. ye, let them be.
- Subj. P. I may or can be &c.
- Imp. I might, cou'd, wou'd & shou'd, be &c.
- Perf. I might, cou'd, wou'd & shou'd have been &c.
- Plup. I had been &c.
- Fut. I shall have been &c.

Of the GERUNDS & SUPINES.

**T**HERE are also in Verbs three Gerunds, ending in *Di*, *Do* & *Dum*, which are properly Verbal Substantives, of all Cases but the Vocative; *Amandi* of Loving, *Amando* in Loving, *Amandum* to Love.

There are two Supines, the first in *Um*, which has the Signification of the Infinitive Mood Active, and is used after Verbs signifying Motion. as *Veniunt Spectatum*, they come to see. The latter in *U*, which has the Signification of the Infinitive Passive, and is used after an Adjective; as *facile factu*, easy to be done.

In Verbs are two Numbers, the Singular and Plu

Plural; in each of which there are three Persons. Sing. *Ego amo*, I love, *Tu amas*, thou lovest, *Ille amat*, he loveth: Plural. *Nos amamus*, we love, *Vos amatis*, ye love, *Illi amant*, they love.

Conjugation is a Set of Terminations, by which Verbs are varied into all their Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

Verbs have four Conjugations.

The first Conjugation hath *a* long before *re*, as *amare* to Love.

The Second has *e* long before *re*, as *docere* to teach.

The Third has *e* short before *re*, as *Legere*, to read.

The fourth has *i* long before *re*, as *Audire* to hear.

In every regular Verb are four Parts especially to be considered, the present Tense, the perfect, the Infinitive Mood, and the first Supine. as,

*Amo, amavi, amare, amatum.*

*Doceo, docui, docere, doctum.*

*Lego, legi, legere, lectum.*

*Audio, audiui, audire, auditum.*

1. From *Amo* is formed *Amabam, amabo, ama, amato, amem, amarem, amare, amandi, amando, amandum, amans.*

From *Amavi*, *amaveram, amaverim, amavissim, amavero, amavisse, amatum.*

From *Amatum, amatu, amatus, amaturus.*

2. From *Doceo* is formed *docebam, docebo, doce, doceto, doceam, docerem, docere, docendi, docendo, docendum, docens.*

From



# ETYMOLOGY

65

From *Docui*, *docueram*, *docuerim*, *docuissem*,  
*docuero*, *docuisse*, *doctum*.

From *Doctum*, *doctu*, *doctus*, *docturus*.

3. From *Lego*, *legebam*, *legam*, *lege*, *legito*, *legam*, *legerem*, *legere*, *legendi*, *legendo*, *legendum*, *legens*.

From *Legi*, *legeram*, *legerim*, *legissem*, *legero*,  
*legisse*, *lectum*.

From *Lectum*, *lectu*, *lectus*, *Lecturus*.

4 From *Audio* is form'd *audiebam*, *audiam*,  
*audi*, *audito*, *audiam*, *audirem*, *audire*, *audiendi*,  
*audiendo*, *audiendum*, *audiens*.

From *Audivi*, *audiveram*, *audiverim*, *audivissem*, *audivero*, *audivisse*, *auditum*.

From *Auditum*, *auditu*, *auditus*, *auditurus*.



## The ACTIVE VOICE.

## The INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Sing.	Amo,	<i>I love,</i>	or <i>do love.</i>
	Amas,	<i>Thou lovest,</i>	or <i>dost love.</i>
	Amat,	<i>He loveth,</i>	or <i>doth love.</i>
Plur.	Amamus,	<i>We love,</i>	or <i>do love.</i>
	Amatis,	<i>Ye love,</i>	or <i>do love.</i>
	Amant,	<i>They love,</i>	or <i>do love.</i>

## Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Amabam,	<i>I loved,</i>	or <i>did love.</i>
	Amabas,	<i>Thou lovedst</i>	or <i>didst love.</i>
	Amabat,	<i>He loved,</i>	or <i>did love.</i>
Plur.	Amabamus,	<i>We loved,</i>	or <i>did love.</i>
	Amabatis,	<i>Ye loved,</i>	or <i>did love.</i>
	Amabant,	<i>They loved,</i>	or <i>did love.</i>

## Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Amavi,	<i>I have loved.</i>	
	Amavisti,	<i>Thou hast loved.</i>	
	Amavit,	<i>He hath loved.</i>	
Plur.	Amavimus,	<i>We have loved.</i>	
	Amavistis,	<i>Ye have loved.</i>	
	Amaverunt, ere,	<i>They have loved.</i>	(Plu-

## Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	Amaveram,	<i>I had loved.</i>
	Amaveras,	<i>Thou hadst loved.</i>
	Amaverat,	<i>He had loved.</i>
Plur.	Amaveramus,	<i>We had loved.</i>
	Amaveratis,	<i>Ye had loved.</i>
	Amaverant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

## Future Tense.

Sing.	Amabo,	<i>I shall,</i>	<i>or will love.</i>
	Amabis,	<i>Thou shalt,</i>	<i>or wilt love.</i>
	Amabit,	<i>He shall,</i>	<i>or will love.</i>
Plur.	Amabimus,	<i>We shall,</i>	<i>or will love.</i>
	Amabitis,	<i>Ye shall,</i>	<i>or will love.</i>
	Amabunt,	<i>They shall,</i>	<i>or will love.</i>

## The Imperative Mood.

Sing.	Ama, amato,	<i>Love thou.</i>
	Amet, amato,	<i>Let him love.</i>
Plur.	Amemus,	<i>Let us love.</i>
	Amate, amatote,	<i>Love ye.</i>
	Ament, amanto,	<i>Let them love.</i>

## The Subjunctive Mood

Sing.	Amem,	<i>I may,</i>	<i>or can love.</i>
	Ames,	<i>Thou mayst,</i>	<i>or canst love.</i>
	Amet,	<i>He may,</i>	<i>or can love.</i>
Plur.	Amemus,	<i>We may,</i>	<i>or can love.</i>
	Ameris,	<i>Ye may,</i>	<i>or can love.</i>
	Ament,	<i>They may,</i>	<i>or can love.</i>

## Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Amarem,	<i>I might,</i>	or <i>cou'd love.</i>
	Amares,	<i>Thou mightst</i>	or <i>coudst love.</i>
	Amaret,	<i>He might,</i>	or <i>cou'd love.</i>
Plur.	Amaremus,	<i>We might,</i>	or <i>cou'd love.</i>
	Amaretis,	<i>Ye might,</i>	or <i>cou'd love.</i>
	Amarent,	<i>They might,</i>	or <i>cou'd love.</i>

## Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Amaverim,	<i>I might have loved.</i>
	Amaveris,	<i>Thou mightst have loved.</i>
	Amaverit,	<i>He might have loved.</i>
Plur.	Amaverimus,	<i>We might have loved.</i>
	Amaveritis,	<i>Ye might have loved.</i>
	Amaverint,	<i>They might have loved.</i>

## Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	Amaviffem,	<i>I had loved.</i>
	Amaviffes,	<i>Thou hadst loved.</i>
	Amaviffet,	<i>He had loved.</i>
Plur.	Amaviffemus,	<i>We had loved.</i>
	Amaviffetis,	<i>Ye had loved.</i>
	Amaviffent,	<i>They had loved.</i>

## Future Tense.

Sing.	Amavero,	<i>I shall have loved.</i>
	Amaveris,	<i>Thou shalt have loved.</i>
	Amaverit,	<i>He shall have loved.</i>

Plu-

# ETYMOLOGY

69

	Amaverimus,	<i>We shall have loved.</i>
Plur.	Amaveritis,	<i>Ye shall have loved.</i>
	Amaverint,	<i>They shall have loved.</i>

## The Infinitive Mood.

Pres.	Amare,	<i>to Love.</i>
Perf.	Amavisse,	<i>to have loved.</i>
Fut.	Amaturum esse or fuisse,	<i>to be about to love.</i>

## GERUNDS.

Amandi,	<i>of loving.</i>
Amando,	<i>in loving.</i>
Amandum,	<i>to love.</i>

## SUPINES.

Amatum,	<i>to love.</i>
Amatu,	<i>to be loved.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Amans,	<i>Loving.</i>
Fut.	Amaturus,	<i>about to love.</i>



## The INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Sing.	Doceo,	<i>I teach,</i>	or <i>do teach.</i>
	Doces,	<i>Thou, teachest,</i>	or <i>dost teach.</i>
	Docet,	<i>He teacheth,</i>	or <i>doth teach.</i>
Plur.	Docemus,	<i>We teach,</i>	or <i>do teach.</i>
	Docetis,	<i>Ye teach,</i>	or <i>do teach.</i>
	Docent,	<i>They teach,</i>	or <i>do teach.</i>

## Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Docebam,	<i>I taught,</i>	or <i>did teach.</i>
	Docebas,	<i>Thou taughtst,</i>	or <i>didst teach.</i>
	Docebat,	<i>He taught,</i>	or <i>did teach.</i>
Plur.	Docebamus,	<i>We taught,</i>	or <i>did teach.</i>
	Docebatis,	<i>Ye taught,</i>	or <i>did teach.</i>
	Docebant,	<i>They taught,</i>	or <i>did teach.</i>

## Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Docui,	<i>I have taught</i>
	Docuisti,	<i>Thou hast taught.</i>
	Docuit,	<i>He hath taught.</i>
Plur.	Docuimus,	<i>We have taught.</i>
	Docuistis,	<i>Ye have taught.</i>
	Docuerunt, or ere,	<i>They have taught.</i>

Plu-

# ETYMOLOGY

71

## Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	Docueram,	<i>I had taught.</i>
	Docueras,	<i>Thou hadst taught.</i>
	Docuerat,	<i>He had taught.</i>
Plur.	Docueramus,	<i>We had taught.</i>
	Docueratis,	<i>Ye had taught.</i>
	Docuerant,	<i>They had taught.</i>

## Future Tense.

Sing.	Docebo,	<i>I shall,</i>	<i>or will teach.</i>
	Docebis,	<i>Thou shalt,</i>	<i>or wilt teach.</i>
	Docebit,	<i>He shall,</i>	<i>or will teach.</i>
Plur.	Docēbimus,	<i>We shall,</i>	<i>or will teach.</i>
	Docebitis,	<i>Ye shall,</i>	<i>or will teach.</i>
	Docebunt,	<i>They shall,</i>	<i>or will teach.</i>

## The Imperative Mood.

Sing.	Doce, doceto,	<i>Teach thou.</i>
	Doceat, doceto,	<i>Let him teach.</i>
Plur.	Doceamus,	<i>Let us teach.</i>
	Docete, docetote,	<i>Teach ye.</i>
	Doceant, docento,	<i>Let them teach.</i>

## The Subjunctive Mood.

### Present Tense.

Sing.	Doceam,	<i>I may,</i>	<i>or can teach.</i>
	Doceas,	<i>Thou mayst,</i>	<i>or canst teach.</i>
	Doceat,	<i>He may,</i>	<i>or can teach.</i>
		F 4	Plu.

Plur.	Doceamus,	<i>We may,</i>	<i>or can teach.</i>
	Doceatis,	<i>Ye may,</i>	<i>or can teach.</i>
	Docent,	<i>They may,</i>	<i>or can teach.</i>

## Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Doceram,	<i>I might,</i>	<i>or cou'd teach.</i>
	Doceres,	<i>Thou mightst,</i>	<i>or cou'dst teach.</i>
	Doceret,	<i>He might,</i>	<i>or cou'd teach.</i>
Plur.	Doceremus,	<i>We might,</i>	<i>or cou'd teach.</i>
	Doceretis,	<i>Ye might,</i>	<i>or cou'd teach.</i>
	Docerent,	<i>They might,</i>	<i>or cou'd teach.</i>

## Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Docuerim,	<i>I might have taught.</i>
	Docueris,	<i>Thou mightst have taught.</i>
	Docuerit,	<i>He might have taught.</i>
Plur.	Docuerimus,	<i>We might have taught.</i>
	Docueritis,	<i>Ye might have taught.</i>
	Docuerint,	<i>They might have taught.</i>

## Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	Docuissē,	<i>I had taught.</i>
	Docuisses,	<i>Thou hadst taught.</i>
	Docuisset,	<i>He had taught.</i>
Plur.	Docuissēmus,	<i>We had taught.</i>
	Docuissetis,	<i>Ye had taught.</i>
	Docuissent,	<i>They had taught.</i>

Future Tense.

Sing.	Docuero,	<i>I shall have taught.</i>
	Docueris,	<i>Thou shalt have taught.</i>
	Docuerit,	<i>He shall have taught.</i>
Plur.	Docuerimus,	<i>We shall have taught.</i>
	Docueritis,	<i>Ye shall have taught.</i>
	Docuerint,	<i>They shall have taught.</i>

The Infinitive Mood.

Pre.	Docere,	<i>to teach.</i>
Perf.	Docuisse,	<i>to have taught.</i>
Fut.	Dociturum, esse or fuisse,	<i>To be about to teach.</i>

Gerunds.

Docendi,	<i>of teaching.</i>
Docendo,	<i>in teaching.</i>
Docendum,	<i>to teach.</i>

Supines.

Doctum,	<i>to teach.</i>
Doctu,	<i>to be taught.</i>

Participles.

Pref.	Docens,	<i>Teaching.</i>
Fut.	Dociturus,	<i>about to teach.</i>

The

## The Indicative Mood.

*I read or do read.*

Pre. S. Lego, is, it; P. imus, itis, unt.

*I read or did read.*

Im. S. Legeham, as, at; P. amus atis, ant.

*I have read*

Per. S. Legi, isti, it; P. imus, istis, erunt, or ère.

*I had read.*

Plu. S. Legeram, as, at; P. amus, atis, ant.

*I shall or will read.*

Fu. S. Legam, es, et; P. emus, etis, ent.

## The Imperative Mood.

S. Lege, legito,

*Read thou.*

Legat, legito,

*Let him read.*

P. Legamus,

*Let us read.*

Legite, legitote,

*Read ye.*

Legant, legunto,

*Let them read.*

## The Subjunctive Mood.

*I may or can read.*

Pre. S. Legam, as, at; P. amus, atis, ant.

*I might or cou'd read*

Im. S. Legerem, es, et; P. emus, etis, ent.

*I might have read.*

Per. S. Legerim, is, it; P. imus, itis, int.

*I had read.*

Plu. S. Legissem, es, et; P. emus, etis, ent.

*I shall have read.*

Fu. S. Legero, is, it; P. imus, itis, int.

The



The Infinitive Mood.

Pres. Legere, *to read.*

Perf. Legisse, *to have read.*

Fut. Lecturum esse or fuisse, *to be about to read.*

Gerunds.

Supines.

Legendi, *of reading.* Lectum, *to read.*

Legendo, *in reading.* Lectu, *to be read.*

Legendum, *to read.*

Participles.

Pres. Legens, *Reading.*

Fut. Lecturus, *About to read.*

The Indicative Mood.

*I hear, or do hear.*

Pre. S. Audio, is, it ; P. imus, itis, unt.

*I heard, or did hear.*

Imp. S. Audiebam, as, at ; P. amus, atis, ant.

*I have heard.*

Perf. S. Audivi, isti, it ; P. imus, istis, erunt, or

*I had heard* (ere.

Plu. S. Audiveram, as, at ; P. amus, atis, ant.

*I shall or will hear.*

Fut. S. Audiam, es, et ; P. emus, etis, ent.

The Imperative Mood.

S. Audi, audito, *Hear thou.*

Audiat, audito, *Let him hear.*

P. Audiamus, *Let us hear.*

Audite, auditote, *Hear ye.*

Audiant, audiunto, *Let them hear.* (The

## The Subjunctive Mood.

*I may or can hear.*

Pref. S. Audiam, as, at ; P. amus, atis, ant.

*I might or cou'd hear.*

Imp. S. Audirem, es, et ; P. emus, etis, ent.

*I might have heard.*

Per. S. Audiverim, is, it ; P. imus, itis, int.

*I had heard.*

Plup. S. Audivissem, es, et ; P. emus, etis, ent.

*I shall have heard.*

Fut. S. Audivero, is, it ; P. imus, itis, int.

## The Infinitive Mood.

Pref. Audire, *to hear.*Perf. Audivisse, *to have heard.*Fut. Auditurum esse or fuisse, *to be about to hear.*

Gerunds.

Supines.

Audiendi, *of hearing.* Auditum, *to hear.*Audiendo, *in hearing.* Auditu, *to be heard.*Audiendum, *to hear.*

Participles.

Pref. Audiens, *hearing.*Fut. Auditurus, *about to hear.*

**I**N the Passive Voice the Auxiliary Verb *Sum* is used with the Participle of the Perfect Tense, in the Perfect and all Tenses deriv'd from it. But it must carefully be observed, that the Partici-

ple

## ETYMOLOGY

77

ple, as an Adjective, must agree with the Substantive in Case, Gender and Number.

Sum, es, fui, esse, *To be.*

### The Indicative Mood.

#### Present Tense.

Sing.	Sum,	<i>I am.</i>
	Es,	<i>Thou art.</i>
	Eſt,	<i>He is.</i>
Plur.	Sumus,	<i>We are.</i>
	Eſtis,	<i>Ye are.</i>
	Sunt,	<i>They are.</i>

#### Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Eram,	<i>I was.</i>
	Eras,	<i>Thou waſt.</i>
	Erat,	<i>He was.</i>
Plur.	Eramus,	<i>We were.</i>
	Eratis,	<i>Ye were.</i>
	Erant,	<i>They were.</i>

#### Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Fui,	<i>I have been.</i>
	Fuiſti,	<i>Thou haſt been.</i>
	Fuit,	<i>He hath been.</i>
Plur.	Fuimus,	<i>We have been.</i>
	Fuiſtis,	<i>Ye have been.</i>
	Fuerunt or ère,	<i>They have been.</i>

Plu-

## Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	Fueram,	<i>I had been.</i>
	Fueras,	<i>T'hou hadst been.</i>
	Fuerat,	<i>He had been.</i>
Plur.	Fueramus,	<i>We had been.</i>
	Fueratis,	<i>Ye had been.</i>
	Fuerant,	<i>I key had been.</i>

## Future Tense.

Sing.	Ero,	<i>I shall or will be.</i>
	Eris,	<i>T'hou shalt or wilt be.</i>
	Erit,	<i>He shall or will be.</i>
Plur.	Erimus,	<i>We shall or will be.</i>
	Eritis,	<i>Ye shall or will be.</i>
	Erunt,	<i>I key shall or will be.</i>

## The Imperative Mood.

Sing.	Sis, es, esto,	<i>Be thou.</i>
	Sit, esto,	<i>Let him be.</i>
Plur.	Simus,	<i>Let us be.</i>
	Sitis, este, estote,	<i>Be ye.</i>
	Sint, sunt,	<i>Let them be.</i>

## The Subjunctive Mood.

## Present Tense.

Sing.	Sim,	<i>I may or can be.</i>
	Sis,	<i>T'hou mayst or canst be.</i>
	Sit,	<i>He may or can be.</i>
Plur.	Simus,	<i>We may or can be.</i>
	Sitis,	<i>Ye may or can be.</i>
	Sint,	<i>I key may or can be.</i>

Im-

## Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Essem,	<i>I might or cou'd be.</i>
	Esset,	<i>Thou mightst or couldst be.</i>
	Esset,	<i>He might or cou'd be.</i>
Plur.	Essemus,	<i>We might or cou'd be.</i>
	Essetis,	<i>Ye might or cou'd be.</i>
	Esset,	<i>They might or cou'd be.</i>

## Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Fuerim,	<i>I might have been.</i>
	Fueris,	<i>Thou mightst have been.</i>
	Fuerit,	<i>He might have been.</i>
Plur.	Fuerimus,	<i>We might have been.</i>
	Fueritis,	<i>Ye might have been.</i>
	Fuerint,	<i>They might have been.</i>

## Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	Fuisssem,	<i>I had been.</i>
	Fuisses,	<i>Thou hadst been.</i>
	Fuisset,	<i>He had been.</i>
Plur.	Fuisssemus,	<i>We had been.</i>
	Fuissetis,	<i>Ye had been.</i>
	Fuissent,	<i>They had been.</i>

## Future Tense.

Sing.	Fuero,	<i>I shall have been.</i>
	Fueris,	<i>Thou shalt have been.</i>
	Fuerit,	<i>He shall have been.</i>
Plur.	Fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been.</i>
	Fueritis,	<i>Ye shall have been.</i>
	Fuerint,	<i>They shall have been.</i>



## The Infinitive Mood.

Pref.	Esse,	To be.
Perf.	Fuisse,	To have been.
Fut.	Fore or futurum esse,	To be, or about to be.
	Participle Future.	
	Futurus, about to be.	

---

## The Passive Voice.

1. FROM *Amor* is form'd *Amabar, Amabor, Amare, amator, amer, amarer, amari, amandus*.
2. From *Amatus*, *amatus sum-fui, amatus eram-fueram, amatus sim-fuerim, amatus essem-fuissem, amatus ero-fuero, amatum esse-fuisse, amatum iri-amandum esse*.
1. From *Doceor* is form'd *docebar, docebor, docere, docetor, docear, docerer, doceri, docendus*.
2. From *Doctus*, *doctus sum-fui, doctus eram-fueram, doctus sim-fuerim, doctus essem-fuissem, doctus ero-fuero, doctum esse-fuisse, doctum iri-docendum esse*.
1. From *Legor* is form'd *legebar, legar, legere, legitor, legar, legerer, legi, legendus*.
2. From *Lectus*, *lectus sum-fui, lectus eram-fueram, lectus sim-fuerim, lectus essem-fuissem, lectus ero-fuero, lectum esse-fuisse, lectum iri-legendum esse*.

# ETYMOLOGY 81

1. From *Audior*, is formed *audlebar*, *audiar*, *audire*, *auditor*, *audiar*, *audirer*, *audiri*, *audiendus*.
1. From *Auditus*, *auditus sum-fui*, *auditus eram-fueram*, *auditus sim-fuerim*, *auditus essem-fuissem*, *auditus ero-fuero*, *auditum esse-fuisse*, *auditum iri-audiendum esse*.

*Amor*, *amatus sum-fui*, *amari*, To be loved,

## The INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

Sing.	<i>Amor</i> ,	<i>I am loved.</i>
	<i>Amaris</i> , <i>re</i> ,	<i>Thou art loved.</i>
	<i>Amatur</i> ,	<i>He is loved</i>
Plur.	<i>Amamur</i> ,	<i>We are loved.</i>
	<i>Amamini</i> ,	<i>Ye are loved.</i>
	<i>Amantur</i> ,	<i>They are loved.</i>

### Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	<i>Amabar</i> ,	<i>I was loved</i>
	<i>Amabaris-re</i> ,	<i>Thou wast loved.</i>
	<i>Amabatur</i> ,	<i>He was loved.</i>
Plur.	<i>Amabamur</i> ,	<i>We were loved.</i>
	<i>Amabamini</i> ,	<i>Ye were loved.</i>
	<i>Amabantur</i> ,	<i>They were loved.</i>

### Perfect Tense.

Sing.	<i>Amatus sum-fui</i> ,	<i>I have been loved.</i>
	<i>Amatus es-fuisti</i> ,	<i>Thou hast been loved.</i>
	<i>Amatus est-fuit</i> ,	<i>He hath been loved.</i>

G

Pla

- Plur. Amati sumus-fuimus, *We have been loved.*  
 Amati estis-fuistis, *Ye have been loved.*  
 Amati sunt-fuerunt-ere, *They have been loved.*

## Pluperfect Tense.

- Sing. Amatus eram-fueram, *I had been loved.*  
 Amatus eras-fueras, *Thou hadst been loved,*  
 Amatus erat-fuerat, *He had been loved.*  
 Plur. Amati eramus-fueramus, *We had been loved.*  
 Amati eratis-fueratis, *Ye had been loved.*  
 Amati-erant-fuerant, *They had been loved.*

## Future Tense.

- Sing. Amabor, *I shall or will be loved.*  
 Amaberis-ere, *Thou shalt or wilt be loved.*  
 Amabitur, *He shall or will be loved.*  
 Plur. Amabimur, *We shall or will be loved.*  
 Amabimini, *Ye shall or will be loved.*  
 Amabuntur, *They shall or will be loved.*

## The Imperative Mood.

- Sing. Amare, amator, *Be thou loved.*  
 Ametur, amator, *Let him be loved.*  
 Plur. Amemur, *Let us be loved.*  
 Amamini amaminor, *Be ye loved.*  
 Amentur, amantor, *Let them be loved.*

The

The Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Amer,	<i>I may or can be loved.</i>
	Ameris-ere,	<i>Thou mayst or canst be loved.</i>
	Ametur,	<i>He may or can be loved.</i>
Plur.	Amemur,	<i>We may or can be loved.</i>
	Amemini,	<i>Ye may or can be loved.</i>
	Amentur,	<i>They may or can be loved.</i>

Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Amarer,	<i>I might or cou'd be loved.</i>
	Amareris, ere,	<i>Thou mightst or couldst be loved.</i>
	Amaretur,	<i>He might or cou'd be loved.</i>
Plur.	Amaremur,	<i>We might or cou'd be loved.</i>
	Amaremini,	<i>Ye might or cou'd be loved.</i>
	Amarentur,	<i>They might or cou'd be loved.</i>

Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Amatus sim-fuerim,	<i>I might have been loved.</i>
	Amatus sis-fueris,	<i>Thou mightst have been loved.</i>
	Amatus sit-fuerit,	<i>He might have been loved.</i>

Plur.	Amati simus-fuerimus,	<i>We might have been loved.</i>
	Amati sitis-fueritis,	<i>Ye might have been loved.</i>
	Amati sint-fuerint,	<i>They might have been loved.</i>

## Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	Amatus essem-fuissem,	<i>I had been loved.</i>
	Amatus esses-fuisses,	<i>Thou hadst been loved.</i>
	Amatus esset-fuisset,	<i>He had been loved.</i>
Plur.	Amati essemus-fuissemus,	<i>We had been loved.</i>
	Amati essetis-fuissetis,	<i>Ye had been loved.</i>
	Amati essent-fuissent,	<i>They had been loved.</i>

## Future Tense.

Sing.	Amatus ero-fuero,	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>
	Amatus eris-fueris,	<i>Thou shalt have been loved.</i>
	Amatus erit-fuerit,	<i>He shall have been loved.</i>

Plur.



## ETYMOLOGY

85

Plur.	Amati erimus-fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been loved.</i>
	Amati eritis-fueritis,	<i>Ye shall have been loved.</i>
	Amati erunt-fuerint,	<i>They shall have been loved.</i>

### The Infinitive Mood.

Pres.	Amari,	<i>To be loved.</i>
Perf.	Amatum esse-fuisse,	<i>To have or had been loved.</i>
Fut.	Amatum iri-amandum esse,	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

### PARTICIPLES.

Perf.	Amatus,	<i>Loved.</i>
Fut.	Amandus,	<i>To be Loved.</i>

*Doceor, doctus sum-fui, doceri, To be taught.*

### The INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>I am taught.</i>
Pres. S.	Doceor, ris-ere, tur ; P. mur, mini, ntur.
	<i>I was taught.</i>
Imp. S.	Docebar, ris re, tur ; mur, mini, ntur.
	<i>I have been taught.</i>
Perf. S.	Doctus sum-fui, es-fuisti, est-fuit ; P. ti sumus-fuimus, estis-fuistis, sunt-fuerunt-ere.

G 3

Plu.

*I had been taught.*

Plu. S. Doctus eram-fueram, eras-fueras, erat-fuerat ; P. ti eramus-fueramus, eratis-fueratis, erant-fuerant.

*I shall or will be taught.*

Fut. S. Docebor, eris-ere, itur ; P. imur, imini, untur.

### The Imperative Mood.

Sing	Docere, docetor,	<i>Be thou taught.</i>
	Doceator, docetor,	<i>Let him be taught.</i>
Plur.	Doceamur,	<i>Let us be taught.</i>
	Docemini, doceminor,	<i>Be ye taught.</i>
	Doceantur, docentor,	<i>Let them be taught.</i>

### The Subjunctive Mood.

*I may or can be taught.*

Pres. S. Docear, ris-re, tur ; P. mur, mini, ntur.

*I might or cou'd be taught.*

Im. S. Docerer, ris-ere, etur ; P. mur, mini, ntur.

*I might have been taught.*

Perf. S. Doctus fim-fuerim, fis-fueris, fit-fuerit ;  
P. ti fimus fuerimus, fitis-fueritis, fint-fuerint.

*I had been taught.*

Plu. S. Doctus essem-fuissem, esses-fuisses, esset-fuisset ; P. ti essemus-fuissemus, essetis-fuissetis, essent-fuissent.

Fut. S. Doctus ero-fuero, eris-fueris, erit-fuerit ;  
P. ti erimus-fuerimus, eritis-fueritis, erunt-fuerint.

The Infinitive Mood.

Pres. Doceri, *To be taught.*  
 Perf. Doctum esse-fuisse, *To have or had been taught.*  
 Fut. Doctum iri-docendum esse, *To be about to be taught.*

Participles.

Perf. Doctus, *Taught.*  
 Fut. Docendus, *To be taught.*

*Legor, lectus sum-fui, legi; To be read.*

The Indicative Mood.

*I am read.*

Pres. S. Legor, eris-re, itur; P. imur, imini, untur.

*I was read.*

Im. S. Legebar, ris-re, tur; P. mur, mini, ntur.  
 Perf. S. Lectus sum-fui, es-fuisti, est-fuit; P. ti sumus-fuimus, estis-fuistis, sunt fuerunt-ere.

*I had been read*

Plu. S. Lectus eram-fueram, eras-fueras, erat-fuerat; P. ti eramus-fueramus, eratis-fueratis, erant-fuerant.

*I shall or will be read.*

Fut. S. Legar, eris-ere, etur; P. mur, mini, ntur.

## The Imperative Mood.

Sing.	Legere, legitor,	<i>Be thou read.</i>
	Legatur, legitor,	<i>Let him be read.</i>
Plur.	Legamur,	<i>Let us be read.</i>
	Legimini, legiminor,	<i>Be ye read.</i>
	Legantur, leguntor,	<i>Let them be read.</i>

## The Subjunctive Mood.

*I may or can be read.*

Pref. S. Legar, ris-are, tur ; P. mur, mini, ntur.

*I might or cou'd be read.*

Im. S. Legerer, ris-ere, tur ; P. mur, mini, ntur.

*I might have been read.*Perf. S. Lectus sim-fuerim, sis-fueris, sit-fuerit ;  
P. ti simus-fuerimus, fitis-fueritis, sint fuerint.*I had been read.*

Plu. S. Lectus essem-fuissem, esses-fuisses, esset-fuisset ; P. ti essemus-fuissemus, essetis-fuissetis, essent-fuissent.

*I shall have been read.*Fut. S. Lectus ero-fuero, eris-fueris, erit-fuerit ;  
P. erimus-fuerimus, eritis-fueritis, erunt-fuerint.

## The Infinitive Mood.

Pref. Legi, *To be read.*Perf. Lectum esse-fuisse, *To have or had been read.*Fut. Lectum iri-legendum esse, *To be about to be read.*

Par-

Participles.

Perf. Lectus, *read.*  
Fut. Legendus, *To be read.*

*Audior, auditus sum-f i, audiri, To be heard.*

The Indicative Mood.

*I am heard*  
Pres. S. Audior, ris-re, tur ; P. mur, mini, untur.  
*I was heard*  
Im. S. Audiebar, ris-re, tur ; P. mur, mini, ntur.  
*I have been heard*  
Perf. S. Audius sum-fui, es-fuisti, est-fuit ; P. ti sumus-fuimus, estis-fuistis, iunt-fuerunt-ere.  
*I had been heard.*  
Plu. S. Auditus eram fueram, eras fueras, erat-fuerat ; P. ti eramus-fueramus, eratis-fueratis, erant-fuerant.  
*I shall or will be heard.*  
Fut. S. Audiar, eris-ere, etur ; P. emur, emini, entur.

The Imperative Mood.

Sing. Audire, auditor, *Be thou heard.*  
Audiatur, auditor, *Let him be heard.*  
Plur. Audiamur, *Let us be heard.*  
Audimini, audiminor, *Be ye heard.*  
Audiantur, audiantor, *Let them be heard.*

The



## The Subjunctive Mood.

*I may or can be heard.*

Pref. S. Audiar, ris-re, tur ; P. mur, mini, ntur.

*I might or could be heard.*

Im. S. Audirer, ris-re, tur ; P. mur, mini, ntur.

*I might have been heard.*

Perf. S. Auditus sim-fuerim, sis fueris, sit-fuerit ; P. ti simus-fuerimus, sitis-fueritis, sint-fuerint.

*I had been heard.*

Plu. S. Auditus essem-fuissem, esses-fuisses, esset-fuisset ; P. essemus-fuissemus, essetis-fuissetis, essent-fuissent.

*I shall have been heard.*

Fut. S. Auditus ero-fuero, eris-fueris, erit-fuerit ; P. ti erimus-fuerimus, eritis-fueritis, erunt-fuerint.

## The Infinitive Mood.

Pref. Audiri, *To be heard.*Perf. Auditum esse-fuisse, *To have or had been heard.*Fut. Auditum iri-audiendum esse, *To be about to be heard.*

## Participles

Perf. Auditus, *Heard.*Fut. Audiendus, *to be heard.*

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

THESE Verbs are generally accounted Irregular ; *Eo, Queo, Possum, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Edo, Fero, Feror, Fio.*

*Eo, ivi, ire itum, To go.*

The Indicative Mood.

Pres. S. *Eo, is, it ; P. Imus, iris, eunt.*

Im. S. *Ibam, ibas, ibat ; P. ibamus, ibatis, ibant.*

Perf. S. *Ivi, ivisti, ivit ; P. Ivimus, ivistis, ivērunt-ere.*

Plu. S. *Iveram, iveras, iverat ; P. Iveramus, iveratis, iverant.*

Fut. S. *Ibo, ibis, ibit ; P. Ibimus, ibitis, ibant.*

The Imperative Mood.

S. *I, ito ; eat, ito ; P. eamus, ite, itote ; eant, eunto.*

The Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. S. *Eam, eas, eat ; P. eamus, eatis, eant.*

Im. S. *Irem, ires, iret ; P. iremus, iretis, irent.*

Perf. S. *Iverim, iveris, iverit ; P. iverimus, iveritis, iverint.*

Plu. S. *Ivissem, ivisses, ivisset ; P. ivissemus, ivissetis, ivissent.*

Fut. S. *Ivero, iveris, iverit ; P. iverimus, iveritis, iverint.*

The Infinitive Mood.

Pres. *Ire.* Perf. *Ivisse.* Fut. *Iturum esse-faiste.*  
Ger.

Ger. Fundi, eundo, eundum. Sup. Itum, itu.  
Part Iens, iturus.

In like manner are declined the Compounds of *Eo*; but in the Perfect Tense, and Tenses derived from it, *ivi* is contracted into *ii*, &c. as *Adii, adiisti, adiit*, &c. Sometimes *adisti, adieram, adierim, adiffem, adiero, adisse*.

*Queo*, I can; *Nequeo*, I cannot; are conjugated the same way as *Eo*: only they want the Imperative, & Gerunds; and the Participles are scarcely in Use.

*Possum*, being compounded of *potis* & *sum*, shou'd be *Potsum*, but for the better sound *t* is changed into *s* before another *s*, and retain'd before any other Letter.

*Possum, potui, posse*, To be able.

#### The Indicative Mood.

Pres. S. *Possum, potes, potest*; P. *possumus, potestis, possunt*.

Imp. S. *Poteram, eras, erat*; P. *eramus, eratis, erant*.

Perf. S. *Potui, isti, it*; P. *imus, istis, erunt-ere*.

Plu. S. *Potueram, eras, erat*; P. *eramus, eratis, erant*.

Fut. S. *Potero, eris, erit*; P. *erimus, eritis, erunt*.

#### The Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. S. *Possim, sis fit*; P. *simus, fitis, sint*.

Imp. S. *Possem, ses, fet*; P. *semus, fetis, sent*.

Perf.

## ETYMOLOGY

93

Perf. S. Potuerim, eris, erit ; P. erimus, eritis, erint.

Plu. S. Potuisssem, isses, issent ; P. issemus, issentis, issent.

Fut. S. Potuero, eris, erit ; P. erimus, eritis, erint.

### The Infinitive Mood.

Pref. Possē. Perf. Potuisse.

*Volo, volui, velle*, To will, or be willing. *Nolo, nolui, nolle*, To be unwilling. *Malo, malui, malle*, To be more willing.

Note, that *Nolo*, is compounded of *Non-volo* ; *Malo*, of *magis-volo*. *Vis, vult, vultis*, are contracted of *volis, volit, volitis*, and *o* is changed into *u*, for of old they said *Volt, voltris*.

### The INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pref. S. *Volo, vis, vult* ; P. *volumus, vultis, volunt*.

S. *Nolo, nonvis, nonvult* ; P. *nolumus, nonvultis, nolunt*.

S. *Malo, mavis, mavult* ; P. *malumus, mavultis, malunt*.

Imp. S. *Volebam, bas, bat* ; P. *bamus, batis, bant*.

S. *Nolebam, bas, bat* ; P. *bamus, batis, bant*.

S. *Malebam, bas, bat* ; P. *bamus, batis, bant*.

Perf. S. *Volui, isti, it* ; P. *imus, istis, erunt-ere*.

S. *Nolui, isti, it* ; P. *imus, istis, erunt-ere*.

Ma-

- S. Malui, isti, it ; P. imus, istis, erunt-ere.  
 Plu. S. Volueram, eras, erat ; P. eramus, eratis, erant.  
 S. Nolueram, eras, erat ; P. eramus, eratis, erant.  
 S. Malueram, eras erat ; P. eramus, eratis, erant.  
 Fut. S. Volam, les, let ; P. lemus, letis, lent.  
 S. Nolum, les, let ; P. lemus, letis, lent.  
 S. Malam, les, let ; P. lemus, letis, lent.

## The Imperative Mood.

S. Noli, nolito ; P. nolite, nolitote.

## The Subjunctive Mood.

- Pres. S. Velim, lis, lit ; P. limus, litis, lint.  
 S. Nolim, lis, lit ; P. limus, litis, lint.  
 S. Malim, lis, lit ; P. limus, litis, lint.  
 Imp. S. Vellem, les let ; P. lemus, letis, lent.  
 S. Nollem, les, let ; P. lemus, letis, lent.  
 S. Mallem, les, let ; P. lemus, letis, lent.  
 Perf. S. Voluerim, eris, erit ; P. erimus, eritis, erint.  
 S. Noluerim, eris, erit ; P. erimus, eritis, erint.  
 S. Maluerim, eris erit ; P. erimus, eritis, erint.  
 Plu. S. Voluissē, issēs, issēt ; P. issēmus, issētis, issēnt.  
 S. Noluissē, issēs, issēt ; P. issēmus, issētis, issēnt.  
 S. Maluissē, issēs, issēt ; P. issēmus, issētis, issēnt.



Fut. S. Voluero, eris, erit ; P. erimus, eritis, erint.

S. Noluero, eris, erit ; P. erimus, eritis, erint.

S. Maluero, eris, erit ; P. erimus, eritis, erint.

The Infinitive Mood.

Pres. Velle.	Perf. Voluisse.	Part. Volens.
Nolle.	Noluisse.	Nolens.
Malle.	Maluisse.	Malens.

*Edo, edi, edere*, To eat, is Regular, except that in some of its Tenses and Persons, It is like the Verb *sum*.

Indic. Pres. *Edo, es, est ; — — estis. —*

Subj. Imp. *Essem, esses, esset ; essemus, essetis, essent.*

Imp. *Es, este, este, estote. Infin. esse.*

*Fero, tuli, ferre, latum*, To bear or suffer, and its Passive *Feror, latus sum*, are Regular Verbs of the third Conjugation, except that *Fers, fert, fertis, fertor, ferre, ferretur* ; *ferris, ferre, fertur, fertor*, are contracted of *Feris, ferit, feritis, feritor, ferite, fererem ; fereris, ferere, feritur & feritor*.

Also *Fer* is contracted of *fere*, in the same manner as *Dic, Duc, Fac*, of *Dice, Duce, Face*.

*Fio, factus sum, fieri*, To be made or to become, Passive of *Facio*.

The

## The Indicative Mood.

Pres. S. Fio, fis, fit ; P. Firmus, firis, fiunt.

Imp. S. Fiebam, ebas, ebat ; P. ebamus, ebatis, ebant.

Perf. S. Factus sum fui, es-fuisti, est-fuit, &c.

Plu. S. Factus eram-fueram, eras-fueras, erat-fuerat, &c

Fut. S. Fiam, es, et ; P. emus, etis, ent.

## The Imperative Mood.

S. Fi, fito ; fiat, fito ; P. fiamus ; fite, fitote ; fiant, fiunto.

## The Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. S. Fiam, fias, fiat ; P. fiamus, fiatis, fiant.

Imp. S. Fierem, eres, eret ; P. eremus, eretis, erent.

Perf. S. Factus sim-fuerim, sis-fueris, sit-fuerit, &c.

Plu. S. Factus essem-fuissem, esses-fuisses, esset-fuisset, &c.

Fut. S. Factus ero-fuero, eris-fueris, erit-fuerit &c.

## The Infinitive Mood.

Pres. Fieri. Perf. Factum esse-fuisse. Fut. Factum-iri.

Participles. Perf. Factus. Fut. Faciendus.

OF DEFECTIVE VERBS.

**T**HO some of the Irregular Verbs want some of their Parts, and upon that account may also be called Defective Verbs ; yet by Defective here is chiefly Understood such as want considerable Branches, or are used only in a few Tenses and Persons. Those that most frequently occur are,

Ind. Pres. S. Aio, *I say*, ais, ait ; P. aiunt.

Imp. S. Aiebam, bas, bat ; P. barnus, batis, bant.

Perf. Aisti. Imper. Ai.

Subj. Pres. S. Aias, aiat ; P. Aiamus, aiatis, ai-  
ant. Part. Aiens.

Ind. Pres. S. Inquam, *I say*, quis, quit ; P. qui-  
mus, quitis, quiunt.

Imp. Inquebat, Inquebant.

Perf. Inquisti, Inquit. Fut. Inquires, In-  
quiet.

Imp. Inque, inquito. Part. Inquiens. —

Subj. Imp. S. Forem, *I should be*, res, ret ; P.  
remus, retis, rent.

Infinitive. Fore.

Subj. Pres. S. Ausim, *I dare*, ausis, ausit ; P. au-  
sint.

Perf. S. Faxim, *I will do it*, faxis, faxit ;  
P. faxint

Fut. S. Faxis, faxis, faxit ; P. faxint.

*for fecerim & fecero.*

Imper. S. Ave, aveto ; P. avete, avetote.

Inf. Avere, *Hail, Good morrow.*

H

Sal-

Salvetis, salveo ; salvet., salvetote ; salvere,  
*Your Servant.*

Ind. Presl Quæso, *I pray*, Quæsumus.

Cedo, cedite, *Tell or give me.*

These three Verbs have only the Perfect Tense and those derived from it, tho' they may have the Signification of the present.

Oli, oleram, oderim, odero, odissē.

Memini, eram, erim, issem, ero, isse. Imp. Memento mementore. Cæpi, cœperam, cœperim, cœpissē, cœpero, cœpisse.

Novi also from *Noſco* has often the Signification of the present. *Faris & Daris* want the first Person Singular Indicative.

*Inſit*, He begins, *Inſunt*. *Deſit*, It is wanting, are rarely found. Some are compounded of *ſi*, as *ſis*, for *ſi vis* ; *ſultis* for *ſi vultis* ; *ſides*, or *ſi audes*.

### OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**I**MPERSONAL Verbs are used for the most part in the 2d Person Singular, with the sign *it*, before 'em in English. as,

Placet *it pleaseth*, Decet *It becometh*. They are thus conjugated.

Ind. Pœnitet, Pœnit.bat, Pœnituit, Pœnituerat, Pœnitebit.

Subj. Pœniteat, Pœniteret, Pœnituerit, Pœnituiſſet.

Inf. Pœnitere Pœnituiſſe.

Impersonal Verbs are often used Personally, especially in the Plural Number, as *Multa homini accidunt*. *Parvum parva decet*

Most

Most Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice, especially such as have otherwise no Passive ; as.

*Pugnatur, pugnatum est, a me, a te, ab illo, a nobis, a vobis, ab illis.* I fight, Thou fightest, He fighteth &c.

Rules for the forming of the PERFECT TENSE  
& SUPINES.

**OBS.** Compound Verbs form their Perfect Tense and Supines, as the Simple ; as *Docceo, docui, doctum; Edo eo, edocui, edoctum.*

But the first Syllable, which is doubled in the Perfect Tense of some Simple Verbs, is not retained in the Compound ; as the Simple Verb *Pello* makes *pepuli* ; *Repeilo* *repuli*, not *repepuli*.

Except *Accurro, decurro, excurro, percurro, prae-curro, procurro, Repungo* ; and the Compounds of *Do, Disco, Posco, Sto*.

The Compounds of *Lo*, in the 2d. Conjugation, end in *dedi*, those of *Sto* in *steti* ; as *Reddo, reddidi; Consto, constitui*.

Verbs compounded with *Plico* and *sub, re*, or a Noun form *avi*, but the rest *avi* or *ui*, as *Supplico, avi; replico, avi; Multiplico, avi; Applico, ui* and *avi*.

**V**ERBS of the first Conjugation make *avi* in the perfect Tense, and *atum* in the Supine.

as,

H 2

Vo.



Voco, avi, atum.	to call.
Convoco, avi, atum,	to call together.
Except in the first Conjugation.	
Do, dedi, datum,	to Give.
Circumdo,	to surround.
Peffundo,	to overthrow.
Satisdo,	to give Surety.
Venundo,	to sell.

The rest are of the 3d. Conjugation.

Sto, steti, statum,	to stand.
so ad, con, in, ob, per, pro, re, Sto.	
Fxsto, stiti, stitum & statum,	to stand out.
Præsto, stiti, stitum, statum,	to perform.
Lavo, vi, lotum, lautum, & lavatum,	to wash.
Poto, avi, potum, tatum,	to drink.
Juvo, vi, tum,	to help.
Adjuvo, vi, tum,	to assist.
Cubo, ui, itum.	to lye.
so ac, ex, re-cubo.	
Domo, ui, itum,	to tame.
so e, per-domo.	
Sono, ui, itum,	to sound.
so as, circum, con, dis, ex, in, per, præ, re-sono.	
Tono, ui, itum,	to thunder.
so at, circum, in, superin, re-ono.	
Veto, ui, itum,	to forbid.
Crepo, ui, itum,	to make a Noise.
so con, in, per, re, crepo.	
Discrepo, avi,	
Mico, ui,	to shine.
Emico, ui, atum,	to shine forth.
Dimico, avi, atum,	to fight.
Plico, ui, avi, itum, atum,	to fold.
Frico, ui, etum,	to rub.

Seco, ui, ctum,	to cut.
circum, con, de, dis, ex, in, inter, per, præ, re,	sub-Seco.
Neco, avi, & ui, atum,	to kill.
Eneco, avi, ui, ectum,	to put to death.
Interneco, avi, atum, ectum	to put all to the Sword.
Labo,	to faint or fall down.
Nexo,	to bind.

Verbs of the Second Conjugation make *ui*, in the Perfect Tense, and *itum*, in the Supine : as,  
Habeo, ui, itum, to have.  
Prohibeo, ui, itum, to hinder.

Except

Doceo, ui, ctum,	to teach.
so ad, con, de, e, per sub-doceo.	
Teneo, ui, tentum,	to hold.
so con, de, dis, ob, re, fus tineo.	
Misceo, cui, tum & xtum,	to mix
so ad, com, im, inter, per, re misceo.	
Censeo, ui, sum,	to think
so ac, per, re, suc-censeo.	
Torreo, ui, tostum,	to roast.
so ex-torreo.	
Sorbeo, ui, sorptum,	to sup up.
so ab, ex, re-sorbeo.	
Prandeo, di, sum,	to dine.
Video, di, sum,	to see.
so in, per, præ, pro, re-video.	
Sedeo, di, sessum,	to sit.
so as, con, de, dis, in, ob, pos, præ, re, sub fideo.	
circum fideo, or circumsedeo, supersedeo.	
Strideo, stridi,	to make a Noise.

Mordeo, momordi, mortum, *to bite.*

*so* ab, com, de, ob, præ, re-mordeo.

Pendeo, pependi, pentum, *to hang*

*so* de, im, pro super-pendeo.

Spondeo, ipospendi ipontum, *to promise.*

*so* de, re-spondeo.

Tondeo, totondi, tontum, *to clip.*

*so* at, circum, de-tondeo.

Moveo, vi, tum, *to move.*

*so* a, ad, com, de, di, e, per, pro, re, se, sub, trans-moveo.

Foveo, vi, tum, *to cherish.*

*so* con, re-foveo.

Voveo, vi, tum, *to vow or wish.*

*so* de-voveo.

Faveo, vi, fautum, *to favour.*

Caveo, vi, cautum, *to beware.*

*so* præ caveo.

Paveo, vi, *to be afraid.*

*so* ex paveo

Ferveo, bai, *to boil.*

*so* de, ef, in, per, re ferveo.

Conniveo, nivi & nixi, *to wink.*

Illeco, vi, etum, *to blot out.*

Compleo, evi, etum, *to fill.*

*so* de, ex, im, adim. op, re, sup-pleo.

Fleo, evi, etum, *to weep.*

*so* as, de-fl. o.

Nco, evi, etum, *to spin.*

Cico, — citum, *to stir up.*

*so* ac, con, ex, per, in-ci o.

Oleo, ui, itum, *to smell.*

*so* ob, per, re, sub-oleo.

# ETYMOLOGY

103

Exoleo, evi, erum,	to fade.
	so obs, in, ab-oleo.
Adoleo, evi, ultum,	to grow up.
Suadeo, si, tum,	to advise.
	so dis, pe.-suadeo
Rideo, si, tum,	to laugh.
	so ar de, ir sub-rideo.
Maneo, si, tum,	to stay.
	so per, re-maneo.
Hareo si, tum,	to stick.
	so ad, co, in, ob, sub, hareo.
Ardeo, si, tum,	to burn
	so ex, in, ob-ardeo.
Tergeo, si, tum,	to wipe
	so abs, circum, de, ex, per-tergeo.
Mulceo, si, tum,	to stroak.
	so abs, circum, de, per, re-mulceo.
Mulgeo, si, tum, tum,	to milk.
	soe, im-mulgo.
Jubeo, jussi, jssum,	to command.
	so fide-jubeo.
Indu'geo, si, f m,	to indulge.
Torqueo, si, tum,	to overthrow.
	so con, de, dis, ex, in, ob, re torqueo.
Urgeo, si,	to urge or press.
	so ad, ex, in, per, sub, super, urgeo.
Fulgeo, si,	to shine
	so at, circum, con, ef, inter, præ, re-super-fulgeo.
Turgeo, si,	to swell.
Algeo si,	to be cold.
Lugeo, xi,	to mourn.
	so e, pro, sui-lugeo.
Luceo, xi,	to shine.

al, circum, col, di, e, il, inter, per or pel, præ,  
pro, re, sub, trans-luceo.

Frigeo, xi, *to be cold.*

*so per, re-frigeo.*

Augeo, xi, ctum, *to increase.*

*so ad, ex-augeo.*

These Verbs want the Supine.

Splendeo, ui,

*to shine.*

Madeo, ui,

*to be moist.*

Albeo, ui,

*to be white.*

Areo, ui,

*to be dry.*

Calleo, ui,

*to be hardened.*

Candeo, ui,

*to be bright.*

Egeo, ui,

*to want.*

Indigeo, ui,

*to want.*

Floreo, ui,

*to flourish.*

Frondeo, ui,

*to be green.*

Horreo, ui,

*to quake.*

Niteo, ui,

*to glitter.*

Palleo, ui,

*to be pale.*

Pateo, ui,

*to be open.*

Rigeo, ui,

*to be stiff.*

Sordeo, ui,

*to be nasty.*

Tepeo, ui,

*to be warm.*

Vigeo, ui,

*to flourish.*

Timeo, ui,

*to fear.*

Sileo, ui,

*to be silent.*

These Verbs want both the Perfect Tense and  
Supine.

Lacteo,

*to suck milk.*

Liveo,

*to be black & blue.*

Scatco,

*to overflow.*



Renideo,	<i>to shine.</i>
Mæreo,	<i>to be sorrowful.</i>
Aveo,	<i>to desire.</i>
Polleo,	<i>to be able.</i>
Flaveo,	<i>to be yellow.</i>
Denseo,	<i>to grow thick.</i>
Glabreo,	<i>to be smooth or bare.</i>

Verbs of the 2d. Conjugation are various in their Perfect Tense and Supines.

Cio.

Facio, feci, factum, *to do.*  
*so* are, ca'e, made, tepe, bene, male, satis-facio. and  
 af, con, de, ef, in, inter, of, per, præ, pro, re,  
 fuf-ficio

Jacio, jeci, jactum, *to throw.*  
*so* ab, ad, circum, con, de, dis, e, in, intro, per,  
 pro, re, sub, super, superin, tra-jicio.

Aspicio, exi, ectam, *to behold.*  
*so* circum, con, de, dis, in, intro, per, pro, re, re-  
 tro, fu -picio.

Allicio, exi, ectum, *to allure.*  
*so* il, pel-licio.

Elicio, ui, itum, *to draw out.*  
 Dio, Gio, Pio.

Fodio, di, flum, *to dig.*  
*so* ad circum, con, ef, in, inter, per, præ, re, fuf,  
 trans-fodio.

Fugio, gi, itum, *to fly.*  
*so* au, con, de, dif, ef, per, pro, re, fuf, subter,  
 trans-fugio.

Capio, cepi, captum, *to take.*  
*so* ante-capio, ac, con, de, ex, in, inter, oc, per,  
 præ, re, fus-cipio.

Ra-

Rapio, ui, raptum, *to pull or snatch.*  
*so ab, ai, cor, di, e, præ, pro, tur-rapio.*

Sapio, ui, *to be wise.*  
*so con, de, re-sapio.*

Cupio, ivi, itum, *to desire.*  
*so con, dis, per cupio.*

Rio, Tio.

Pario, peperi, partum, *to bring forth.*  
*Its Compounds are of the 4th.*

Quatio, quæssi, quæssum, *to shake.*

Concuro, cussi, cissum.

*so de, dis, ex, in, per, re, reper, suc-cutio.*  
 Uo.

Arguo, ui, utum, *to reprove.*  
*so co, red arguo.*

Acuo, ui, utum, *to sharpen.*

Exuo, ui, utum, *to put off cloaths.*

Induo, ui, utum, *to put on.*

Imbuo, ui, utum, *to moisten.*

Abluo, ui, utum, *to wash off.*

*so el, circum, col, di, e, inter, per, pol, pro, sub-luo.*

Minuo, ui, utum, *to lessen.*

*so cum, de, di, im, minuo.*

Stauo, ui, utum, *to appoint.*

*so con, de, in, præ, pro, re, sub-stituo.*

Suo, ui, utum, *to sew*

*so as, circum, con, dis, in, præ, re-luo.*

Tribuo, ui, utum, *to give.*

*so ad con, dis, re-tribuo.*

Fluo, xi, xum, *to flow.*

*so as, circum, con, de, dif, et, in, inter, per, præter,*  
*pro, re, super, trans-fluo.*

Struo, xi, ctum, *to build.*

*so* ad, circum, con, de, ex, in, ob, præ, sub, super-  
struo.

Ruo, ui, itum, *to rust or fall.*

Diruo, ui, tum, *to overthrow.*

*so* e, ob, pro, sub-ruo.

These want the Sapiue.

Metuo, ui, *to fear.*

*so* præ metuo.

Pluo, ui, *to rain.*

*so* ap, com, de, im, per-pluo.

Congruo, ui, *to agree.*

Ingruo, ui, *to assault.*

Annuo, ui, *to assent.*

*so* ab, in, re-annuo.

Respuo, ui, *to refuse.*

Bo, bi, tum.

Bibo, bibi, bibitum, *to drink*

*so* ad, com, e, im, per, præ bibo.

Scabo, bi — *to scratch.*

Lambo, bi — *to lick.*

*so* ad, circum, de, præ-lambo.

Accumbo, cubui, itum, *to sit down*

*so* con, de, dis, in, oc, pro, re, suc, super, in-cum-  
bo.

Scribo, psi, ptum, *to write*

*so* ad, circum, con, de, ex, in, inter, per, post,  
præ, pro, re, sub, super, supra, tran-scribo.

Nubo, psi, ptum, *to be married.*

*so* de, e, in, obnubo, *to veil.*

Co, ci, xi, ctum.

Dico, xi, ctum, *to say.*

*so* ab, ad, con, contra, e, in, inter, præ, pro-dico.

Duco, xi, ctum, *to lead.*

ab, ad, circum, con, de, di, e, in, intro, ob, per,  
præ, pro, re, se, sub, tra, or trans-duco.

Vinco, vici victum, *to overcome.*

*so* con, de, e, per, re-vinco.

Parco, peperci, parium *to spare*

*so* com-parco or perco.

Ico, ici, ictum, *to strike.*

Sco, vi, tum.

Cresco, crevi, tum, *to grow.*

*so* con, de, ex re-dresco : & ac in per, pro, suc,  
super-cresco, *without the supine.*

Nosco, vi, tum, *to know.*

*so* dig, ig, inter, per, præ-nosco.

Agnosco, vi, itum, *to own.*

Cognosco, vi, itum, *to know.*

Quiesco, evi, etum, *to rest.*

*so* ac, con, inter, re-quiesco.

Scisco, scivi, itum, *to ordain*

*so* ad, con, de, præ re-scisco.

Suesco, vi, tum, *to be accustomed.*

*so*, as, con, de. in-tuesco.

Pasco, pavi, pastum, *to feed.*

*so* com, de-pasco,

Disco, didici, *to learn.*

*so* ad con de e, per, præ-disco.

Posco, poposci— *to demand.*

*so* ap de, ex, re-posco.

Compesco, ui, *to stop.*

Dispesco, ui,— *to separate.*

Glisco— *to grow.*

Inceptives in *sco*, have the same perfect as  
their primitives. as,

Madesco, madui, *to become moist.*

- Aresco ui. *to become dry.*  
 Ardesco. fi, sum, *to begin to burn.*  
 Do di, sum.  
 Cudo, di, sum, *to stamp.*  
*so ex in per, pro re-cudo.*  
 Mando, di, sum, *to chew.*  
*so præ re-mando.*  
 Scando, di, sum, *to climb.*  
*so a, con, de, e, ex, in, tran-scendo.*  
 Prehendo, di, sum, *to take hold of.*  
*so ap, com, de-prehendo.*  
 Accendo, di, sum. *to kindle.*  
*so in, suc-cendo.*  
 Defendo, di, sum, *to defend.*  
*so of-tendo.*  
 Pando, di, passum, pansum. *to open.*  
*so dis ex, ob præ re-pando.*  
 Comedo. di, estum, *to eat.*  
 Fundo, fudi, fustum. *to pour forth.*  
*so af circum, con. de, dif, ef, in, inter, of, per, pro,*  
*re iuf, super superin, trans-fundo.*  
 Scindo, scidi, scissum. *to cut.*  
*so ab, circum con, dis, ex, inter, per, præ, pro,*  
*re tran-scindo.*  
 Findo, fidi, fissum. *to cleave.*  
*so con, dii, in findo.*  
 Tendo tetendi tentum, *to stretch out.*  
*so at con de, dis, ob, præ, pro, sub-tendo.*  
 Extendo. di, sum, tum.  
 Ostendo di, tum, *to shew.*  
 Tundo, tutudi, tusum, & runsum, *to beat in a*  
*Mortar.*



Contundo, tudi, tatum, *to bruise.*

*ſo* ex, ob, per, re-tundo.

Cado cecidi caſum, *to fall.*

Incido, di, caſum, *to fall in.*

Occido di caſum, *to fall down.*

Recido, di, caſum, *to fall back.*

*ſo* ac, con, de, ex, inter, pio, ſuc-cido, have no  
Supine.

Cædo cecidi, cæſum, *to cut, or to kill.*

*ſo* ab, abs, con, circum, de, ex, in, inter, oc, per,  
præ re ſuc-cido.

Pedo, pepedi, peditum *to break wind backwards.*

*ſo* cp-pedo.

Pendo pependi, pentum *to weigh.*

*ſo* ap, de, diſ, ex, im, per, re, ſus-pendo.

Credo, didi, ditum, *to believe.*

Abdo, didi, ditum, *to hide.*

*ſo* ad, con, de, di, e, in, ob, per, præ red, ſub, tra,  
decon, recon, coad, ſuperad, deper, diſper,  
ven-do.

Abſcondo, di, itum, *to hide.*

Strido, ſtridi, *to creak.*

Rudo, di, *to bray as an Aſs.*

Sido, di, *to ſink down.*

Confido, edi, eſſum, *to ſettle.*

*ſo* as, circum, de, in, ob, per, re, ſub-fido.

Do, fi, ſum.

Divido, fi, ſum, *to divide.*

Rado, fi, ſum, *to ſhawe.*

*ſo* ab, circum, cor, de, e, inter, præ, ſub-rado.

Claudo, fi, ſum, *to ſhut*

*ſo* con, diſ, ex, in, inter oc, præ, re, ſe-cludo.

Plaudo, fi, ſum, *to play.*

# ETYMOLOGY

I I

*ſo* ap, circum-plaudo ; com, dis, ex, ſup pludo.

Ludo ſi ſum, *to play.*

*ſo* ab al col, de, e, il inter pro, re-ludo.

Trudo ſi, ſum *to thruſt.*

*ſo* abs con de, ex, in ob pro, re-trudo.

Lædo, ſi, ſum, *to hurt*

*ſo* ab, col, e, il-lido.

Vado, ſi, ſum, *to go.*

*ſo* circum, e, in, per, ſuper-vado.

Cedo, ceſſi, ceſſum, *to yield.*

*ſo* abs, ac, ante, con, de, dis, ex, in, in er, præ,  
pro, re retro ſe, ſuc-cedo.

Go or Gao xi, Etam.

Cingo cinxi cinctum, *to gird.*

*ſo* ac, dis ircum, in præ re ſuc-cingo.

Fligo, xi. Etam *to diſh upon.*

*ſo* af con in, pro-fligo.

Jungo, xi Etam *to join.*

*ſo* ab ad con. de. dis, in inter, ſe, ſub-jungo.

Lingo, xi. linctam *to lick.*

*ſo* de e. pol lingo.

Mungo, nxi nctam, *to wipe the Noſe.*

*ſo* e-mungo.

Plango, nxi. nctam, *to lament.*

Rego, xi. Etam *to govern.*

St ngao nxi, nctum *to daſh out.*

*ſo* di, ex, in, inter præ, re-ſtinguo.

Tego, xi, Etam *to cover.*

circum con de, in, ob, per, præ, pro, re, ſub,  
ſuper-tego

Tingo, xi, Etam. *to dye.*

*ſo* con in-tingo.

Ungu, unxi, Etam, *to anoint.*

- Surgo, exi, ectum, *to rise.*  
*so* as, circum, con, de, ex, in, re-surgo.  
 Pergo, xi, ectum, *to proceed.*  
 Stringo, nxi, nctum, *to bind.*  
*so* ad, con, de, dis, ob, per, præ, re, sub-stringo.  
 Fingo, nxi, ictum, *to feign.*  
*so* af, con, ef, re-fingo.  
 Pingo, nxi, ictum, *to paint.*  
*so* ap, de-pingo.  
 Frango, fregi, fractum, *to break.*  
*so* con, de, dis, ef, in, per, præ, re, sus-fringo.  
 Ago, egi, actum, *to do; to drive.*  
*so* ab, ad, ex, red, sub, trans-igo: circum, per-ago;  
 cogo, *for* ccago  
 Satago, egi, *to be busy.*  
 Prodigio, egi, *to be lavish.*  
 Dego, egi, *to live.*  
 Ambigo, *to doubt.*  
 Tango, tetigi, tactum, *to touch.*  
*so* at, con, ob, per-tingo.  
 Lego, gi, ctum, *to read, to gather.*  
*so* al, per, præ, re, sub-lego: col, de, e, recol, feligo  
 Diligo, exi, ectum, *to love.*  
 Intelligo, exi, ectum, *to understand.*  
 Negligo, exi, ectum, *to neglect.*  
 Pungo, pug-gi, punctum, *to prick.*  
 Repungo, repupugi, repunxi.  
 Compungo, xi, ctum, *so* dis, ex, inter-pungo.  
 Pango, panxi, pactum, *to fix.*  
 Pango, pepegi, pactum, *to bargain.*  
 Compingo, pegi, pactum *to put to gether.*

Go, fi, sum; xi, xum.

Spargo, fi, sum, *to spread.*

*so* ad, circum, con, di, in, inter, per, pro, re-  
spergo.

Mergo; fi, sum, *to plunge.*

*so* de, e, im, sub-mergo.

Tergo, fi, sum, *to wipe.*

*so* abs, de, ex, per-tergo.

Figo, xi, xum, *to fasten.*

*so* af, con, de, in, of, per, præ, re, suf, trans-  
figo.

Frigo, xi, xum, etum, *to fry.*

Clango, xi, *to sound a trumpet.*

Ningo, ninxi, *to snow.*

Ango, anxi, *to torment*

Vergo, *to incline, to lye to-  
ward.*

Ho, Jo, xi, etum

Traho, xi, etum, *to draw.*

*so* abs, at, circum, con, de, dis, ex, per, pro, re,  
sub-traho.

Veho, xi, etum, *to carry.*

*so* a, ad, circum, con, de, e, in per, præ, præter,  
pro, re, sub, super, trans-veho.

Mejo, minxi, mictum, *to piss.*

*so* im-mejo.

Lo, lui, tum; fi, sum.

Colo, ui, cultum, *to till; to honour.*

*so* ac, circum, ex, in, per, præ, re-colo.

Occulo, ui, ultum, *to hide*

Allo, alui, altum, alitum, *to nourish.*

Molo, ui, itum, *to grind.*

*so* com, e, per-molo.

Antecello, ui.

Excello, ui.

Præcello, ui,

*to excell.*

Percello, culi, culsum,

*to astonish.*

Recello,

*to bend back.*

Pello, pepuli, pulsum,

*to drive.**ſo* ap, com, de, dis, ex, im, per, pro, re pello.

Fallo, feſelli, falſum,

*to deceive.*

Reſello, ſelli,

*to confute.*

Vello, li, vulſi, ſum,

*to pull.**ſo* a, con, e, inter, præ, re-vello. de, di, per-vello, velli.

Sallo, falli, falſum,

*to ſalt.*

Pſallo, pſalli,

*to play on an inſtrument.*

Volo, ui,

*to will.*

Nolo, ui,

*to be unwilling.*

Malo, ui,

*to be more willing.*

Tollo, fuſtuli, ſublatus,

*to liſt up.*

Attollo,

*to take away.*

Mo, ui, itum ; pſi, tum.

Fremo, ui, itum,

*to rage.**ſo* af, circum, con, in, per-fremo.

Gemo, ui, itum,

*to groan.**ſo* ag, circum, con, in, re-gemo.

Tremo, ui,

*to tremble.**ſo* at, circum, con, in-tremo.

Demo, pſi, ptum,

*to take away.*

Promo, pſi, ptum,

*to bring out.**ſo* de, ex-promo.

Sumo, pſi, ptum,

*to take.**ſo* ab, as, con, de, in, præ, re, tran-ſumo.

Como, pſi, ptum,

*to dreſs.*

Emo,



- Emo, emi, emptum, *to buy.*  
 Coemo emi, emptum, *to buy up.*  
*so* ad, dir, ex, inter, per, red-imo.  
 Premo, fli, flum, *to press.*  
*so* ap, com, de, ex, im, op, per, re, sup-primo.  
 No, ui, ni, fi, vi, tum.  
 Pono, posui, situm, *to put.*  
*so* ap, ante, circum, com, de, dis, ex, im, inter, op,  
 post, præ, pro, re, se, sub, super, super-in, trans-  
 pono.  
 Gigno, genui, genitum, *to beget*  
*so* con, e, in, per, pro, re-gigno.  
 Cano, cecini, cantum, *to sing.*  
 Accino, ni, centum, *to sing together.*  
*so* con, in, præ, suc-cino ; oc, re-cino & cano.  
 Temno, pfi, ptum, *to despise.*  
*so* con-temno  
 Sperno, spreui, etum, *to disdain.*  
*so* de-sperno.  
 Sterno, stravi, atum, *to lay flat*  
*so* ad, con, in, præ, pro, sub-sterno.  
 Sino, fivi, fii, situm, *to permit.*  
 Desino, ii, fivi, situm, *to leave off.*  
 Lino, livi, levi, litum, *to daub.*  
*so* al, circum, col, de, il, inter, ob, per, præ, re,  
 sub, subter, superil-lino.  
 Cerno, crevi, cretum, *to decree.*  
*so* de, dis, ex, in, te-cerno.  
 Po, pfi, ptum.  
 Carpo, pfi, ptum, *to pluck.*  
*so* con, de, dis, ex, præ-cerpo.  
 Clepo, pfi, ptum, *to steal.*  
 Repo, pfi, ptum, *to creep.*

*ſo* ad, cor, de, di, e, ir, intro, ob, per, pro, ſub-repo.

Scalpo, psi, ptum, *to ſcratch.*

*ſo* circum, ex-ſcalpo.

Sculpo, pſi, ptum, *to engrave.*

*ſo* ex, in-ſculpo.

Strepo, ui, itum, *to make a Noiſe.*

*ſo* ad, circum, in, inter, ob, per-ſtrepo.

Rumpo, rupi, ptum, *to break.*

*ſo* ab, cor, de, inter, intro, ir, ob, per, præ, pro-rumpo.

Quo, xi, qui, etum.

Coquo, xi, etum, *to boyl.*

*ſo* con, de, diſ, ex, in, per, re-coquo.

Linquo, liqui, *to leave.*

*ſo* relinquo, iqui, liſtum, de, dere-linquo.

### RO.

Quæro, fivi, itum, *to ſeek.*

*ſo* ac, an, con, diſ, ex, in, per, re-quiero.

Tero, trivi, tritum, *to wear.*

*ſo* at, con, de, diſ, ex, in, ob, per, pro, ſub-tero.

Verro, ri, ſum, *to ſweep.*

*ſo* a, con, de, e, præ, re-verro.

Uro, uſſi, uſtum, *to burn.*

*ſo* ad, amb, comb, de, ex, in, per, ſub-uro.

Curro, cucurri, curſum, *to run.*

Gero, geſſi, geſtum, *to carry.*

*ſo* ag, con, di, in, pro, re, ſug-gero.

Fero, tuli, latum, *to bear.*

*ſo* at, ante, au, circum, con, de, diſ, et, in, intro, of, per, poſt, præ, præter, pro, re, ſuper, trans-fero.

Suffero, *to ſuffer, to bear.*

Furo

- Furo, *to be mad.*  
 Sero, sevi, fatum, *to sow.*  
 Affero, sevi, itum, *to plant close by.*  
*so* con, circum, de, dis, in, inter, pro, re, sub,  
 tran-fero.  
 Affero, ui, fertum, *to claim, challenge.*  
*so* con, de, dis, edis, ex, in, inter-fero.  
 So, fivi, fitum.  
 Arcesso, fivi, fitum, *to send for.*  
 Capeſſo, fivi, fitum, *to take.*  
 Laceſſo, fivi, fitum, *to provoke.*  
 Faceſſo, fivi, fitum, *to do, to go away.*  
 Viſo, fi, *to viſit.*  
*so* in, re-viſo.  
 Inceſſo, fi, *to attack.*  
 Depſo, ui, depſtum, *to knead.*  
*so* com, per-depſo.  
 Pinſo, fui, fi, pinſum, piſtum, pinſitum, *to bake.*  
 To.  
 Flecto, flexi, flexum, *to bend.*  
*so* circum, de, in, re, retro-flecto.  
 Plecto, plexi, plexui, xum, *to plait.*  
*so* im-plecto.  
 Necto, nexi, ui, xum, *to lye.*  
*so* an, con, circum, in, ſub-necto.  
 Pecto, exi, ui, exum, *to dreſs.*  
*so* de, ex, re-pecto.  
 Meto, meſſui, meſſum, *to reap.*  
*so* de, e, præ-meto.  
 Peto, tivi, ii, titum, *to ſeek.*  
*so* ap, com, ex, im, op, re, ſup-peto.  
 Mitto, fi, ſum, *to ſend.*

*Jo* a, ad, com, circum, de, di, e, im, inter, intro  
o, per, præ, præter, pro, re, sub, super, trans-  
mitto.

Verto, ti, sum, *to turn.*

*Jo* a, ad, animad, ante, circum, con, de, di, e, in,  
inter, ob, per, præ, præter, re, sub, trans-  
verto

Sterto, ui, *to snore.*

*Jo* de-sterro.

Sisto, stiri, statum, *to stop.*

Astisto, stiri, stitum, *to stand by.*

*Jo* circum, con, de, ex, in, inter, ob, per, re, sub-  
fisto.

Vo, xo.

Vivo, vixi, victum, *to live.*

*Jo* ad, con, per, pro, re, super-vivo.

Solvo, vi, utum, *to loose*

*Jo* ab, dis, ex, per, re-solvo.

Volvo, vi, utum, *to roll.*

*Jo* ad, circum, con, de, e, in, inter, ob, per, pro,  
re, sub-volvo.

Texo, ui, xtum, *to weave.*

*Jo* at, circum, con, de, in, inter, ob, per, præ, pro,  
re, sub-texo

Verbs of the 4th Conjugation make in the  
perfect Tense *ivi*, in the Supine *itum*. as,

Audio, ivi, itum *to hear.*

Obedio, ivi, itum, *to obey.*

Except.

Singultio, tivi, tum, *to sob.*

Sepelio, ivi, ultum, *to bury.*

Venio, i, ventum, *to come.*

# ETYMOLOGI

119

*ſo* ad, ante, circum, con, contra, de, e, in, inter,  
intro, ob, poſt, per, præ, pro, re, ſub, ſuper-  
venio.

Venio, ii, *to be ſold.*

Salio, ui, ii, ſaltum, *to leap.*

Transfilio, ui, ii, ivi, ultum.

*ſo* ab, as, circum, con, de, diſ, ex, in, pro, re, ſub,  
ſuper-filio.

Cambio, pſi, pſum, *to change money.*

Sepio, pſi, pſum, *to incloſe.*

*ſo* circum, diſ, inter, ob, præ-ſepio.

Haurio, ſi, ſtum, *to draw out.*

*ſo* de, ex-haurio.

Sentio, ſi, ſum, *to feel.*

*ſo* as, con, diſ, per, præ, ſub-ſentio.

Raucio, ſi, ſum, *to be hoarſe.*

Sarcio, ſi, ſartum, *to mend.*

*ſo* ex, re-ſarcio.

Farcio, ſi, tum, *to cram.*

*ſo* con, re-fercio, ef, in-fercio, or farciq.

Fulcio, ſi, tum, *to uphold.*

*ſo* con, ef, in, per, ſuſ-fulcio.

Aperio, ui, ertum, *to open.*

Operio, ui, ertum, *to ſhut.*

Comperio, i, ertum, *to know for certain.*

Reperio, i, ertum, *to find.*

Cæcutio, ivi, *to be dim ſighted.*

Gestio, ivi, *to rejoice.*

Glocio, ivi, *to cluck as a Hen.*

Ineptio, ivi, *to play the fool.*

Proſilio, ui, *to leap forth.*

Ferocio, ivi, *to be fierce.*



*Aio* and *Ferio* have no perfect Tense, also desideratives, as, *cognaturio*, to desire to sup. except,

*Parturio*, *ivi*, to be in travail.  
*Hurio*, *ivi*, *itum*, to be hungry.  
*Nuprurio*, *ivi*, to desire to be married.

Verbs Deponent of the first Conjugation are regular. as, *Lator*, *latus-sum*, to rejoice.

Except in the Second.

*Reor*, *ratus-sum*, to think.  
*Miseror*, *miserus*, to pity.  
*Fateor*, *fassus*, to confess.  
*Profitor*, *fessus*, to profess.

so *con-profitor*.

Except in the third.

*Labor*, *lapsus-sum*, to slide.  
 so *al*, *col*, *de*, *di*, *e*, *il*, *inter*, *per*, *præter*, *pro*, *re*,  
*sub*, *subter*, *super*, *trans-labor*.

*Ulcisor*, *ultus*, to revenge.

*Utor*, *usus*, to use.

so *ab*, *de-utor*.

*Loquor*, *locutus*, to speak.

so *al*, *col*, *circum*, *e*, *inter*, *ob*, *præ*, *pro-loquor*.

*Sequor*, *secutus*, to follow.

so *as*, *con*, *ex*, *in*, *ob*, *per*, *pro*, *re*, *sub-sequor*.

*Queror*, *questus*, to complain.

so *con*, *inter*, *præ-queror*.

*Nitor*, *nitus*, *nixus*, to endeavour.

*Pacisor*, *pactus*, to bargain.

so *de-pacisor*.

*Gradior*, *gressus*, to go.

*ſo* ag, ante, circum, con, de, di, e, in, intro, præ,  
præter, pro, re, retro, ſug, ſuper, trans gra  
dior.

Profiſcor, profectus *to go.*

Nanciſcor, naſtus, *to get.*

Patior, paſſus, *to ſuffer.*

Apiſcor, aptus, *to get.*

Adipiſcor, adeptus,  
*ſo* indipiſcor.

Comminiſcor, commentus, *to invent.*

Fruor, truitus, fructus, *to enjoy.*

*ſo* per-fruor.

Obliviſcor, oblitus, *to forget.*

Expergiſcor, experrectus, *to awake.*

Morior, mortuus, *to dye.*

*ſo* com, de, im, inter, præ-morior.

Naſcor, natus, *to be born.*

*ſo* ad, circum, de, e, inter, re, ſub-naſcor.

Orior, ortus, *to riſe.*

*ſo* ab, ad, co, ex, ob, ſub-orior.

Except in the fourth.

Metior, menſus-ſum, *to meaſure.*

ad, com, di, e, præ, re-metior,

Ordior, oriſus, *to begin.*

*ſo* ex, red-ordior.

Experior, expertus, *to try.*

Opperior, oppertus, *to wait for.*

THESE Verbs have no perfect Tenſe.

Veſcor, veſci, *to feed.*

Liquor, liqui, *to melt.*

Medeor, mederi, *to heal.*

Reminiſcor, reminiſci, *to remember.*

Iraſcor,

Iraſcor, iraſci,	to be angry.
Ringor, ringi,	to grin like a Dog.
Prævertor, præverti,	to out run.
Diffiteor, diffiteri,	to deny.
Divertor, diverti,	to turn aſide.
Deſetiſcor, deſetiſci,	to be faint.

## Verbs Neuter Paſſive.

Soleo, ſolitus ſum,	to uſe.
Gaudeo, gaviſus,	to rejoice.
Audeo auſus,	to dare.
Fido, fiſus,	to truſt.
Fio, factus,	to be made, become.

## Of the PARTICIPLE.

A PARTICIPLE is an Adjective derived from a Verb, and partakes of the Tenſe and force of a Verb. There are four Participles.

1. Active Verbs have two Participles, one of the preſent Tenſe, in *ns*, as, *amans*, *docens*; and another of the future, in *rus*, as, *Amaturus*, *doc-turus*.

2. Verbs Paſſive have alſo two Participles, one of the perfect Tenſe, as *amatus*; the other of the future in *dus*, as, *amandus*.

3. Verbs Neuter have two Participles, as the Active; as, *ſedens*, *ſeſſurus*.

4. Verbs Active Intranſitive have frequently three Participles; as, *Carens*, *cariturus*, *carendus*: And ſometimes four, as *Vigilans*, *vigilaturus*, *vigilatus*, *vigilandus*.

5 Verbs Deponent and common have generally four Participles, as, *Loquens, locuturus, locutus, loquendus*. *Dignans, dignaturus, dignatus, dignandus*.

Participles of the present Tense are declined like *felix*; all the rest like *bonus*.

There are also some Adjectives, derived from Verbs, in *bundus*, which are by some call'd Participials as, *Moribundus*, ready to die.

Of the ADVERB.

**A**N ADVERB is an undeclin'd part of Speech joined to a word, to express some Circumstance or manner of its Signification. as, *bene legit*, he reads well; *bene doctus*, well taught; *valde bene*, very well.

The Signification of Adverbs is various, according to the different Circumstances of the Noun or Verb, with which they are join'd.

Sometimes Adverbs are compared: In English the Positive ends in *ly*, as *hardly*; In Latin it ends in *e, o, ter, um, im*; the Comparative in *ius*; and the Superlative in *me*, as, *dure, durius, durissime*; *fortiter, fortius, fortissime*.

Of the CONJUNCTION.

**A** CONJUNCTION is an undeclined word, that joins Sentences and parts of Sentences together. as, *Pulvis & umbra sumus*.

Some Conjunctions are called

1. Prepositive, which are placed first in a Sentence; as *nam, quare, ac, at, ast, atque, et, aut, vel, neque, si, nec, quin, quatenus, fin, neu, sive, ni, nisi*.

2. Postpositive, which are set in the 2d, 3d, or 4th place in a Sentence; as, *autem*, *vero*, *quoque*, *quidem*, *enim*.

3. Common, which are placed in the beginning, middle, or end of a Sentence; as, *Namque*, *etenim*, *siquidem*, *ergo*, *igitur*, *itaque*, &c.

Some words are called Conjunctions, which are really compounded of two or three parts of Speech; as, *quare*, why, *quamobrem*, wherefore, which are compounded of *qua* and *re*, *ob quam rem*.

*Que*, *ne*, *ve*, are called inseparable Conjunctions; because in writing they are never separated from the word they belong to. *Ne* is join'd to a Verb, when a Question is ask'd; as, *vivitne*, Is he alive?

#### Of the PREPOSITION.

**A** PREPOSITION is an undeclined part of Speech put before a Verb in Composition, as *adeo*, I go to; or before a Noun, in a proper Case, as *ad urbem*, to the City.

Some Prepositions govern an Accusative, some an Ablative, some both an Accusative and Ablative.

These Prepositions govern an Accusative. *Ad* to, *apud* at, *adversus*, *adversum*, against, *ante* before, *cis*, *citra*, on this side, *circa*, *circiter*, *circum*, about, *contra* against, *erga* towards, *extra* without, *inter* between, *infra* beneath, *intra* within, *juxta* nigh to, *ob* for, *penes* in the power, *per* by or thro', *præter* besides, *post* at-

ter,



ter, *pone* behind, *propter* because, *secus* by, *secundum* according to, *supra* above, *trans*, *ultra*, beyond, *versus* towards.

These govern an Ablative. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, from or by, *absque* without, *coram* before, *clam* privately, *cum* with, *de*, of or about, *e*, *ex*, of, or out of, *præ* before, *pro* for, *sine* without, *tenus* up to.

These four govern an Accusative or Ablative. *In*, in or into, *sub* under, *super* upon, *subter* under.

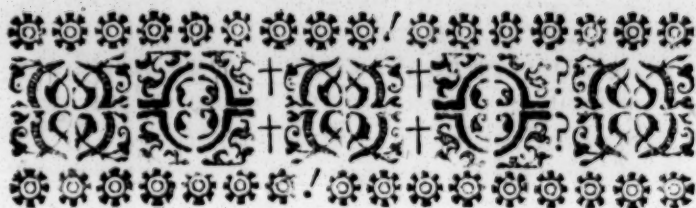
These six are called Inseparable Prepositions, because they are only to be found, in compound words, *am*, *di*, *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, as *Ambio*, *Divello*, *Distrabo*, *Relego*, *Sepono*, *Concreasco*.

Of the INTERJECTION.

**A**N INTERJECTION is a word thrown into a Sentence, which signifies some Emotion of Mind. as, *Ab virgo infelix!* Ah unhappy Maid! *Heu me infelicem*, Unhappy man that I am! *O Cælum, o terra, o maria Neptuni!* O Heaven, o Earth, o Seas of Neptune!

Nouns are sometimes used for Interjections, as *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* o shame! *miserum!* o wretched!

The same Interjection is used sometimes to denote one Passion, sometimes another; as *vah!* which is used to express Joy, Sorrow and Wonder.



## OF SYNTAX.

SYNTAX teacheth the right Construction, or putting together, of words in a Sentence : It consists of two parts, Concord and Government.

There are four Concords.

1. Between the Nominative Case and the Verb.
2. Between the Substantive and the Adjective.
3. Between the Antecedent and the Relative.
4. Between a Substantive and a Substantive.

1. Concord. The Verb agrees with the Nominative Case in Number and Person. as, *Labor omnia vincit*, Labour overcomes all things. *Virg. Tu corpus sine mente geris*. You have a Body without a Soul. *Ovid. Nos patriam fugimus*. We fly from our Country. *Virg. Habitatant dii quoque Sylvas*. Even the Gods have inhabited the Woods. *Id.*

(N. 1. The Nominative Case of the first and second Person is seldom Express ; as, *Non fallam opinionem tuam*. I will not disappoint your Expectation. *Cic. Quod te dignum est, facies*. You will do what becomes you. *Ter.*

Except

Except it be by way of Distinction or Emphasis. as, *Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducit.* I have deposed the Kings, you introduce Tyrants. *Cic. Tu innocentior es quam Metellus?* Are you more Innocent then Metellus?

2. Sometimes the Verb Substantive *sum* is not expressed. as, *Nam Polydorus ego.* For I am Polydore. *Virg. Tu major.* Thou art the elder. *Id. Rari quippe boni.* For good men are scarce. *Juv.*

3. Sometimes the Nominative Case comes before the Infinitive Mood, and the Verb *cæpit*, or *solebat*, is understood. as, *Interea Catalina laborantibus succurrere.* In the mean time Cataline brought assistance to the distressed. *Sal. cæpit*, understood. *Domum alius, alius agros cupere.* One desired a House, another Lands. *Id. i. e. cæpit. At Romani — patriam parentesque armis tegere.* But the Romans defended their Country and Parents by Arms. *Sal. Solam nam perfidus ille te colere.* For that perfidious Man paid you alone the greatest Reverence. *Virg. solebat*, understood.

4. A Verb placed between two Nominative Cases of different Numbers may agree with either of them. as,

*Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt.* Nothing is wanting here but charms. *Virg. Omnia pontus erat.* All was Sea. *Ovid.*

5. Sometimes an Infinitive Mood, Sometimes a Sentence is the Nominative to a Verb, and Substantive to an Adjective; and when it is so, the Verb is the 3d Person Singular, and the Adjective

tive of the Neuter Gender. Also when the Substantive to an Adjective is the word *thing*, the Adjective is often put in the Neuter Gender, and nothing made in Latin for *thing*. as.

*Vivere non est vita, sed valere.* To live is not Life, but to be well. *Mentiri non est meum.* 'Tis not my property to lye. *Ter. Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.* It is a pleasant and honourable thing to die for ones Country. *Hor. Velle suum cuique est.* Every one has his own will. *Per/. Posse loqui eripitur.* The power of speaking is taken away. *Ovid.*

6. The Infinitive Mood will have an Accusative Case before it, which in English has or may have *that*, before it. as,

*Miror te non scribere,* I wonder that you do not write. *Rumor est meum gnatum amare.* There is a report that my Son has a Mistress. *Ter. Te accepisse meas Literas gaudeo.* I am glad — you have receiv'd my Letter. *Cic. Cras te victurum, cras dicis, Posthume, semper.* You say, Posthumus, you will live to Morrow, but you always say to-morrow. *Mart. Credunt se negligi.* They think that they are not regarded. *Ter. Hostium exercitum fustum ca-jumque cognovi.* I was inform'd that the Enemies Army was routed and cut to Pieces. *Cic.*

The Accusatives *me, te, se*, are often understood. as, *sed reddere posse Negabat.* But he said he cou'd not pay. *Virg. for se posse. Ostendit prohibiturum.* He declared he would hinder them. *Cæs. for se prohibeturum.*

This

This Accusative and Infinitive Mood may be resolved by *quod* and the Subjunctive. as, *Scio jam filius quod amet meus*. Plaut. for *filium meum amare*.

2. CONCORD. The Adjective must agree with the Substantive in Case, Gender and Number. as, *Durus Labor*. Hard Labour. *Virg. Animus equus*. A patient mind. *Plaut. Cara Deum soboles*. Dear offspring of the Gods. *Virg. Tua res agitur*. It is your own concern. *Hor. Tuum est officium*. It is your Business. *Ter. Carmina nulla canam*. No more Songs shall I sing. *Virg.*

Obi 1. The Substantive is often understood. as, *Triste Lupus stabulis*. A Wolf is a sad thing to the folds. *Virg. negotium* understood. *Dulce sat is humor*. Moisture is agreeable to the sown Corn. *Virg. Paucis te volo*. A word with you. *Ter. verbis* understood.

2. Sometimes an Adjective put between two Substantives may agree with the latter. as, *non omnis error Stultitia est dicenda*. Every mistake is not to be call'd folly. *Cic.*

3. CONCORD. The Relative must agree with the Substantive foregoing, call'd the Antecedent, in Gender, Number and Person. as, *Felix, qui potuit rerum cognoscere causas*. Happy is he, who was capable of knowing the Causes of things. *Virg. Animum rege, qui nisi paret, imperat*. Govern your Passion, which, If it be not subject, will command. *Hor. Tres epistolas accepi,*



*quas ego lachrymis prope delevi.* I have receiv'd three Epistles, which I have almost defaced with tears. *Cic. Leve fit, quod bene fertur, onus.* That burden is light, which is easily carried. *Ovid. Ille ego sum, omnia qui video.* I am He, who see all things. *Ovid. Egit mihi gratias, qui id consilium dedissem.* He gave me thanks, who gave him such Advice. *Ter. Tu maximus ille es, unus qui nobis cunctando restituis rem.* Thou, the Great, art He alone, who by delay our State retriev'ft. *Virg.*

If there be no Nominative Case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative will be the Nominative Case to the Verb: as, *Deus, qui videt omnia.* God, who sees all things.

But if there be another Nominative Case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative is govern'd of the Verb, or some other word in the Sentence. as, *Deus, quem colimus.* The God, whom we worship. *Cujus numen adoro.* Whose perfections I adore. *Virg. Cui similem non vidi.* The like to whom I never saw. *Hor. A quo omnia sunt facta.* By whom all things were made.

Obs. The Relative *Qui, quæ, quod*, ought to be considered as placed between two Substantives, expressed or understood; with the former of which it agrees in Gender and Number, with the latter in Case.

1. Sometimes both the Substantives are express'd. as, *Erant omnino Itinera duo, quibus Itineribus domo exire possent.* There were but two ways, by which ways they could go from home

home. *Cæs.* *Ultra eum locum, quo in loco, Germani confederant.* Beyond that place, in which place the Germans had settled. *Id.* *Lex Porcia, aliæque leges paratæ sunt, quibus legibus exilium damnatis permissum est.* The Porcian Law, and other Laws were provided, by which Laws the favour of Banishment was allowed to those, that were condemn'd for capital crimes. *Sal.*

2. Sometimes the former is omitted. as, *Urbem quam statuo vestra est.* for *urbs quam urbem.* The City, which I am building, is yours. *Virg.* *Eunuchum quem dedisti nobis quas turbas dedit?* The Eunuch which you gave us, what a Disturbance has he made? *Ter.* for *Eunuchus quem Eunuchum.* *Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas.* That the plays, which he had made, might please the People. *Ter.* for *fabule quas fabulas.*

3. Sometimes they are both omitted. as, *sunt quos pulverem Olympicum collegisse juvat.* There are some who delight to raise Olympic Dust. *Hor.* *Sunt homines. Qualis esset natura montis, qui cognoscerent, misit.* He sent some to know, what was the Nature of the Mountain. *Cæs.* *misit homines.*

4. Sometimes the Antecedent is included in the Possessive, as, *Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum, tali ingenio præditum.* Every Body commended my good fortune, who had a Son of so good a Disposition. *Ter.* for *fortunas mei.*

4. CONCORD. When two Substantives signify the same Thing or Person, they are both put in the same Case. as *Urbs Roma*. The City Rome. *Alexander, Rex Macedoniae*. Alexander King of Macedonia. *Romulus condidit Urbem Romanam*. Romulus built the City Rome. *Formosum Pastor Corydon ardebat Alexin, Delicias Domini*. The Shepherd Corydon was in Love with the beautiful Alexis, the Delight of his Master. *Virg.*

**T**WO or more Substantives Singular with a Conjunction copulative between 'em will have, for the most part, an Adjective, Verb, or Relative, plural. as, *Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt*. My Father and Mother are dead. *Ter. Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt*. Castor and Pollux were seen fighting on horseback. *Cic. Vir et femina, quos vidisti, sunt mortui*. The man and the woman, whom thou saw, are dead.

Obs 1. If the Substantives be of different persons or Genders, the Verb or Adjective will be of the most worthy :

Of Persons, the first is more worthy than the second, and the second more worthy than the third. as, *Si Tu et Tullia valetis, Ego et Cicero valemus*. If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well. *Cic. Egregiam vero laudem refertis, tuque puerque tuus*. You and your Son indeed will gain a mighty Reputation. *Virg.*

Where it may be observed that I and another is we; you and another is ye.

2. In things Animate the Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, and the Feminine than the Neuter. as, *Mulciberis capti Marsque Venusque dolis*. Mars and Venus were caught in Vulcans Chains. *Ovid. Uxor et Mancipium salvæ*. The Wife and Slave are safe.

3. But if the Substantives are things inanimate, the Adjective is for the most part of the Neuter Gender. as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*. Riches, honour and glory, are set before your Eyes. *Sal. Huic ab Alolescentia bella intestina, cædes, rapinæ, discordia civilis grata fuere*. From his Youth Civil Wars, Discord, Murder and rapine were his Delight.

4. Sometimes tho' there be two or more Substantives, the Verb or Adjective will agree with the latter in the Singular. as, *Terror inde ac Desperatio invaserat*. After that Terror and Despair seiz'd them. *Liv. Mibi Delphica tellus, et Claros et Tenedos, Pataræaque regia servit*. To me Delphos, and Claros and Tenedos, and the Pataræan Scepter is subject. *Ovid. Sociis et rege recepto*. Our Friends and King recover'd. *Virg.*

5. Sometimes two Adjectives Singular have a Substantive plural. as *Magna minorque feræ*. The great and lesser Beasts. *Ovid.*

6. Sometimes one Nominative Singular, with the Ablative and the Preposition *cum* are equivalent to two Nom : with a Conjunction : as *Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt*. Quirinus with his Brother Remus shall give Laws. *Virg.*

## OF GOVERNMENT.

1st. Of the Government of Substantives.

**W**HEN two Substantives signify different Things, the Latter is the Genitive Case. as, *Lex Dei*, The Law of God. *Arma Achilles*, The Arms of Achilles. *Pietas fundamentum est omnium virtutum*. Piety is the foundation of all virtues. *Cic.*

Obf. 1. Sometimes this Genitive is elegantly changed into the Adjective possessive. as, instead of *Patris Domus*, we may say, *paterna Domus*. for *Heri filius*, *Herilis filius*.

2. Sometimes it is changed into the Dative. as, *In ore est omni populo*. It is in every Bodies mouth. *Ter. Transfigitur Pulfioni scutum*. Pulfio's Shield is pierced thro'. *Cæs. Cui pes pendet a fortuna, huic nihil potest esse certi*. He, whose hopes depend on fortune, can have nothing certain. *Cic.*

3. But if the Latter Substantive signifies the Quality of a Person or thing, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative. as, *Ingenui vultus puer*. A Boy of a modest Countenance. *Juv. Mulier egregia forma*. A Woman of extraordinary Beauty. *Ter. Flos aurei coloris*. A Flower of a Gold Colour. *Vir nulla fide*. A man of no Credit. *Vir summæ eruditionis*. A man of the greatest Learning. *Cic.*



Of the Primitive Pronouns *Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, and their Possessives.

**T**HE Primitive Pronouns *Mei, tui, sui, &c.* are used after a Substantive, Adjective, or Verb, when Passion is signified. as,

*Amor mei.* The love of me. i. e. with which I am loved. *Desiderium tui.* The want of thee. i. e. with which thou art wanted. *Et memor nostri, Galatea, vivas.* O Galatea, live mindful of us. *Hor. Quia vos mei non indigetis.* Because you don't want me.

The Possessives *meus, tuus, suus, &c.* are used when action or possession is signified. as, *Amor meus,* My Love. i. e. with which I love. *Imago nostra.* Our picture. i. e. which we possess.

*Sui* and *suus*, are called Reciprocals, i. e. they always refer to that which went before, in the same Sentence. as, *Cato se interfecit.* Cato kill'd himself. *Titius aedes suas locavit.* Titius let his own house.

But if they refer to another thing, *Is, ille, ipse*, are to be used; as, *Milo eum interfecit.* Milo kill'd him, i. e. not himself, but Clodius. *Mævius ejus aedes conduxit.* Mævius hir'd his House, i. e. Not his own, but the House of Titius.

So likewise in a compound Sentence. as, *Joannes diligit Petrum et fratrem suum.* John loves Peter and his Brother. i. e. his own, not Peters Brother. But, *Joannes diligit Petrum et fratrem ejus,* is Peter's Brother.

*Pythius piscatores ad se convocavit, et ab his petivit, ut ante suos hortulos postridie piscarentur. Cic.* Pythius call'd the Fishermen to him, and begg'd of 'em that they wou'd fish the next Day before his Gardens. i. e. before the Gardens of Pythius himself.

If there be no ambiguity in a Sentence, sometimes the Relative may be used instead of the Reciprocal. as, *Omnes boni, quantum in ipsis fuit, Cæsarem occiderunt. Cic.* *ipsis* for *se*.

*Perjuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis profiscantur. cum iis* for *secum*.

*Gratias mihi agunt, quod se mea sententia Reges appellaverim. se* for *eos*.

*Mater quod suavit sua, adolescens mulier fecit. Ter.* *Sua* for *ipsius mater*.

Obf. If the Nominative or Accusative Case, go before the Preposition *inter*, we use only the Reciprocal *sui*, as *Fratres gemini inter se cum forma, tum moribus similes. Feras inter se partus atque educatio et natura ipsa conciliat. Cic.*

But if any of the other Cases go before, we use *inter ipsos*, or *inter se*. as *vetus verbum est, communia esse amicorum inter se omnia. Ter. Latissime patet ea ratio, qua societas hominum inter ipsos continetur. Cic.*

Sometimes *sui* and *ipse* refer to the same Substantive. as, *Abisari Alexander nunciari iussit, si gravaretur ad se venire, ipsum ad eum esse venturum. Curt. Ei Legationi Ariovistus respondit, si quid ipsi a Cæsare opus esset, se ad eum venturum fuisse; si quid ille a se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Cæs.*

## 2d. Of the Government of Adjectives.

**A**N Adjective of the Neuter Gender put alone without a Substantive will have a Genitive after it. as, *Quid causæ est?* Hor. *Quid est rei?* what is the matter? Ter. *Quid boni porto?* What good News do I bring? Ter. *Id negotii.* That Business. *Id operis.* That work *Multum auri.* Much Gold. *Tetigine tui quidquam?* Did I touch any thing of yours? Ter.

Obi. Some Neuter Adjectives in the Plural have a Genitive after them. as, *Angusta viarum, opaca locorum.* Virg. *Amara curarum, cuncta terrarum, acuta belli.* Hor. *Incerta fortune, extrema periculorum.* Liv. *Occulta saltuum, amena Asiæ.* Tac. *Prærupta collium, ardua montium.* Just.

**A**DJECTIVES signifying Desire, Knowledge, Ignorance, Remembrance, Forgetting, Care, Fear, Guilt, Innocence, Confidence, Negligence, & Diligence, govern a Genitive Case. as,

Desire. *Est Natura hominum Novitatis avida.*

The Nature of Man is desirous of change.

Plin. *Avidæ cibi.* Greedy of Meat Ter.

*Laudis avidi, pecuniæ Liberales erant.* They were fond of Glory, generous of their Money.

Sal.

Knowledge. *Vir fortis belli ac rei militaris peritus.* A brave Man and skilful in the military art. Cic. *Mens futuri præscia.* A

mind foreseeing the future. Virg.

Ignorance. *Nescia mens hominum fati, sortisque futurae.* The mind of men is ignorant of fate

- fate and their future Condition. *Virg. Alo-*  
*hescentes rerum imperiti sunt.* Young Men  
 are unacquainted with the World. *Ter.*
- Remembrance. *Venturae hyemis memores.* Mind-  
 ful of the approaching Winter. *Virg. Dum*  
*ipse memor mei.* So long as I remember my-  
 self. *Id.*
- Forgetting. *Nec regia Juno immemor est nostri.*  
 Nor is royal Juno unmindful of us. *Virg. Te-*  
*nere Conjugis immemor.* Forgetful of his  
 young Wife. *Hor.*
- Care. *Animus est futuri anxius.* The mind is  
 concerned for the future. *Sen.*
- Fear. *Nocturna animalia timida lucis.* Noc-  
 turnal Animals are fearful of the Light. *Sen.*  
*Timidus procellæ.* Fearful of a Storm. *Hor.*
- Innocence. *Pater est fraterni Sanguinis insons.*  
 My Father is innocent of his Brothers Blood.  
*Ovid. Initi Consilii in caput regis Innoxius.*  
 Innocent of forming a Design against the King's  
 Life. *Curt.*
- Guilt. *Is est reus Avaritiæ.* He is accused of  
 Avarice. *Cic. Nullius flagitii compertus.*  
 Found Guilty of no Crime. *Tac.*
- Confidence. *Mens interrita leti.* A mind not  
 afraid of Death. *Ovid. Audax ingenii.* Of  
 a daring Spirit.
- Negligence. *Improvidus futuri Certaminis.*  
 Unprovided for the approaching Engagement.  
*Liv. Summi Discriminis incuriosus.* Re-  
 gardless of the greatest Danger. *Tac.*
- Diligence. *Venandi studiosi fuerunt* They were  
 fond of Hunting. *Cic. Sum nemorum Stu-*  
*diosus, ait.* I am (says He) a great Adm rer  
 of the Woods. *Ovid.* Ad-

**A**DJECTIVES of *Fullness, Emptiness, Plenty* or *Want*, govern a Genitive Case or an Ablative.

*Fullness* *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor.* Love is a Thing full of anxious fear. *Ovid.*  
*Plena variis casibus vita est.* Life is full of various Mistortunes.

*Emptiness* *Spei metusque Liber.* Free from hope and fear. *Sen.* *Liber terrore Animus.* A mind free from fear. *Cic.* *Vacuas cedis habete manus.* Keep your hands free from blood. *Ovid.* *Nihil tutum, nihil insidii vacuum.* Nothing is safe, nothing free from base Designs.

*Penty.* *Dives e quum, dives pictae vestis et auri.* Rich in Horses, rich in embroider'd Cloaths. *Virg.* *Dives agris, dives positis in feno nummis.* Rich in Lands, rich in Money put out to use. *Hor.* *Sicilia est feracissima frumenti.* Sicily is very fruitful in Corn. *Terra ferax Cerere, multoque feracior uvis.* A Country fruitful in Corn; and much more fruitful in Grapes. *Ovid.*

*Want.* *Quis nisi mentis inops oblatum respuat Aurum?* Who but a fool wou'd refuse Gold when offered him? *Terra pacis inops.* A Country wanting peace. *Ovid.* *Non verbis inops.* Not wanting words. *Cic.*

**V**ERBALS in *As, Participials, Adjectives* put *partitively*, Nouns of *Number*, with Nouns of the *superlative* and *Comparative Degree*, govern alio a Genitive.

N.



*N. B.* Verbals in *Ax* are Adjectives in *ax* derived from Verbs. *Participials* are Participles used as Adjectives, without regard to Time. Adjectives put *partitively* are such as signify part of any thing.

*Ax.* *Tempus edax rerum.* Time is a Consumer of all things. *Ovid.* *Ignis aque pugnax.* Fire is contrary to Water. *Id.* *Virtus est vitiorum fugax.* Virtue is flying from Vice. *Hor.*

*Participials.* *Corpus patiens inediae, algoris.* His Body was able to endure want and cold. *Sal.* *Alieni appetens, sui profusus.* Desirous of what belong'd to another, extravagant of his own. *Id.* *Indoctus pile.* Unskill'd at Ball. *Hor.*

*Partitives.* *Quis mortalium tolerare potest?* What man alive can bear it? *Sal.* *Elephanto belluarum nulla prudentior.* None of the Brutes is more prudent than the Elephant. *Cic.* *Multae istarum arborum mea manu sunt satae.* Many of these Trees were planted with my own hand. *Cic.* *Cum paucis amicorum ad Leonnatum pervenit.* He came to Leonnatus with a few of his friends. *Curt.*

*Numbers.* *Octoginta Macedonum interfecerunt.* They slew eighty of the Macedonians. *Curt.* *Stertinius sapientum octavus.* Stertinius the eighth of the wise men. *Hor.*

*Superlative.* *Theophrastus omnium Philosophorum eruditissimus.* Theophrastus the most learned of all Philosophers. *Cic.* *O Danaum fortissime gentis Tydide.* O Tydides, bravest of the Græcian Nation. *Virg.*

Com-

Comparative. *Major Neronum.* The older of the Nero's. *Hor.*

Obſ. In moſt of theſe Examples *de, e* or *ex Numero* is underſtood, of which the Genitive is properly govern'd ; which is frequently expreſſed in good Authors. as,

*Unus e numero Perſarum.* One of the Perſians. *V. Max. Ex numero adverſariorum circiter ſexcentis interfectis.* About fix hundred of the Enemy being ſlain. *Cæſ.*

To theſe might be added a great Number of other Adjectives, which govern a Genitive. ſuch as,

*Præſtans animi.* *Virg. Ferox ſclerum Tac. Felix curarum. Stat. Degener virtutis patrum. Sil. Modicus voti. Perſ. Seri ſtudiorum. Hor. Facilis Frugum. Claud.*

Of Adjectives that govern a Dative.

**A**DJECTIVES of *Proſit, Diſproſit, Likeneſs, Unlikenefſs* and *Pleaſure*, govern a Dative. *Proſit. Sis bonus, O felixque iuis.* O be good and kind to your Adorers. *Virg. Cunctis eſto benignus, nulli blandus, paucis familiaris, omnibus æquus.* Be kind to all, flattering to none, familiar with few, juſt to every Body. *Cic.*

*Diſproſit. Nec pecori opportuna ſeges, nec comoda Baccho.* The ſoil is neither fit for Cattle, nor convenient for Grapes. *Virg. Conſilia Reipublicæ pernicioſa.* Deſigns deſtructive to the publick. *Inſtruxit copias loco ſibi alieniſſimo.* He drew up his Forces in a place very inconvenient for himſelf. *Cor. Nep.*

Like-

**Likeness.** *Somnio similis res videbatur.* The thing seem'd to him like a dream. *Curt. Os bumerbsque Leo similis.* In his person like a God. *Virg.*

**Unlikeness.** *Suo generi dissimilis.* Unlike his own Extraction. *Sen.*

**Pleasure.** *Est mihi iucunda vestra erga me voluntas.* Your affection to me is always pleasing to me. *Cit. Diva, animo gratissima nostro.* O Goddess, to me you are most acceptable. *Ovid.*

Adjectives of *Likeness* and *Unlikeness* govern a Genitive as well as a Dative Case. as,  
*Domini similis es.* You are like your Master.  
*Ter. Deos esse similes tui putas.* You think the Gods are like yourself. *Ter. Fuit tum sui dissimilis.* He was then unlike himself.  
*Cic.*

Besides these, *Communis, affinis, adversus, æqualis, conscius, conterminus, contrarius, fidus, finitimus, par, propius,* and *superstes,* govern a Genitive and Dative.

*Utilis* and *Aptus* and others of a contrary Signification govern a Dative or an Accusative, with the Preposition *ad.* as,

*Puer adhuc non utilis armis.* *Ovid. Homo ad nullam rem utilis.* *Cic. Non est aptus equis Ithacæ locus.* *Hor. Calcei apti ad pedem.* *Cic. In sibi inutilis.* *Quod ad civium usus inutile est.* *Itoneus arti cuilibet.* *Hor. Non potuisti adducere homines magis ad hanc rem idoneos.* *Plaur.*

Ad-

**A**DJECTIVES in *bilis* and *Participles Passive* have also a Dative after 'em. as

*Pax bonis omnibus optabilis.* Peace is to be desired by all good men. *Cic. Restat Chremes, qui mihi exorandus est.* Chremes still remains, who is to be prevail'd upon by me. *Ter. Tune es quaesita per omnes, Nata, mihi Terras?* And art thou she, o Daughter, sought by me around the world? *Ovid.* But after Participles of the perfect Tense, the Ablative with *a* or *ab* is most common.

Of Adjectives that govern an Accusative.

**A**DJECTIVES that signify Measure have most commonly an Accusative after 'em; and sometimes an Ablative or Genitive.

Acc *Babylon sexaginta millia passuum complexa, muris ducenos pedes altis, quinquagenos latis.* Babylon was sixty Miles round, with Walls 200 feet high, and fifty broad *Plin.*

Abl. *Fossam sex cubitis altam, duodecim latam, quum duxisset.* After he had made a Ditch six Cubits deep, and twelve broad. *Liv.*

Gen. *Areas latas pedum denum, longas pedum quinquagenum facito.* Make the floors ten foot broad and fifty long. *Colum.*

But the word that signifies the Measure of Excess is put only in the Ablative. as,

*Turres decem pedibus quam murus altiores sunt.*

The Turrets are ten foot higher than the wall.

*Curt. Sesquipede est quam tu longior.* He is a foot and a half taller than you. *Plaut.*

Of.

Of Adjectives that govern an Ablative.

**A**N Adjective of the Comparative Degree governs an Ablative of the word, that has in English *than* before it. as,

*Vilius est argentum auro, virtutibus aurum.* Silver is meaner than Gold, and Gold than Virtues. *Hor. Galatea—tenero lascivior hædo; solibus hibernis, æstiva gravior umbra; nobilior pomis, matura dulcior uva.* O Galatea, more wanton than a young Kid; more agreeable than winter's Suns, or summer's Shade; more noble than apples, sweeter than ripe Grapes. *Ovid.*

**Obt.** When *quam* is used for *than*, the word following it is the same Case as that which went before. as,

*Melior est certa pax quam sperata Victoria.* Certain Peace is better than Victory hoped for. *Liv. Ego hominem callidiores vidi neminem quam Phormionem.* I never saw a more cunning fellow than Phormio. *Ter. Intolerabilius nihil est quam femina dives.* Nothing is more Intolerable than a rich woman. *Juv.*

The word signifying the *measure of excess*, is also the Ablative. as,

*Quo difficilius, hoc præclarior.* The more difficult the more glorious. *Cic. Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt.* The more they have, the more they desire. *Just. Quanto superiores sumus, tanto nos geramus humilior.* By how much the more superior we are, so much the more modestly we shou'd behave ourselves. *Cic.*

Some-



*Sometimes an Adverb is used. as, Ejus frater aliquantum ad rem est Avidior. Her Brother is a little too Covetous. Ter.*

**T**HESE Adjectives *Opus* and *Usus* signifying Need, *Dignus, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus, lætus, superbus*; and also *carus, vilis, venalis*, govern an Ablative.

*Opus. Auctoritate tua nobis opus est, et consilio.*

We have need of your Authority and Counsel. *Cic. Nunc animis opus, Ænea, nunc pectore firmo.* Now Æneas, you have need of Courage and a firm Resolution. *Virg.*

*Usus. Nunc viribus usus.* Now you have need of strength. *Virg. Viginti jam usus est filio argenti minis.* Now my Son has need of 20 pounds. *Plaut. Sometimes a Genitive.*

*Dignus. Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.* The Muse won't suffer a man worthy of Glory to dye. *Hor. Amicitia dignus.* Worthy of Friendship.

*Indignus. Indigna genere nostro.* Things unbecoming our Extraction. *Ter. Indignissimus tanto Nato.* Very unworthy such a Son. *Stat.*

*Præditus. Vir singulari bonitate et Modestia præditus.* A man endued with singular Goodness and Modesty. *Cic. Vir summa potestate præditus.* A man invested with the greatest power. *Cic.*

*Captus. Captus oculis et auribus.* Blind and Deaf. *Id. Captus dulcedine vocis.* Charmed with the sweetness of the Voice.

**Contentus.** *Contentus parvo.* Content with a little. *Hor. Qui fit, ut nemo vivat contentus sorte sua.* How comes it to pass, that nobody lives Content with his Condition. *Id.*

**Extorris.** *Finibus extorris, complexu avulsus Iuli.* Banished his Country, and torn from the Embraces of Iulius. *Virg.*

**Fretus.** *Conscientia fretus in regiam venerat.* Depending upon his Innocence he was come to Court. *Curt. Illa fretus ventos agit.* Depending upon this he cuts the Winds. *Virg.*

**Latus.** *Munere latus abit.* He returns pleased with his Present. *Lata malo.* Pleased with her misfortune. *Ovid*

**Superbus.** *Superbus cæde ferarum.* Proud with the Slaughter of wild Beasts. *Ovid. Superbus viribus.* Proud of his strength. *Plaut.*

**Carus.** *Quod non opus est, assè carum est.* That which is not necessary is dear of a penny. *Sen.*

**Vilis.** *Vile est viginti minis.* It is cheap at 20 Pounds. *Plaut.*

**Venalis.** *Otium non gemmis venale, nec auro.* Ease is not to be purchased with jewels nor Gold. *Hor.*

**THESE** Participles signifying Birth, *Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus, genitus & oriundus,* govern an Ablative without, and with a Preposition.

**Natus.** *Natus summo loco.* Born of the greatest Family. *Cic. Quo de genere natus est?* Of what family is he born? *Plaut.*

Prog-

Prognatus. *Ovo prognatus eodem.* Sprung from the same Egg. *Hor. A se prognatus.* Sprung from himself.

Satus. *Sate sanguine Livum.* O thou that art sprung from the blood of the Gods. *Virg. Ilia cum Lauso de Numitore sati.* Ilia with Lausus descended from Numitor. *Sall.*

Cretus. *Hortamur fari quo sanguine cretus.* We advise him to tell of what blood he was descended. *Virg. Ab origine cretus eadem.* Sprung from the same Original. *Ovid.*

Creatus. *Vulcani stirpe creatus.* Descended from the Stock of Vulcan. *Virg.*

Ortus. *Divis orte bonis.* O thou that art sprung from the good Gods! *Hor. Flos de sanguine ortus.* A Flower sprung from the blood. *Ovid.*

Editus. *Mecenas, atavis edite regibus.* O Mæcenās, sprung from ancient Kings. *Hor. Edita de magno flumine Nympha.* The Nymph was descended of a great River. *Ovid.*

Genitus. *Diis genite, et genture Deos.* O thou that art sprung from the Gods, and like to produce Gods. *Virg. Ex Iberis et Celtis genitus.* Descended from the Iberians and Celts. *Mart.*

Oriundus. *Semine caelesti omnes sumus oriundi.* We are all sprung from celestial seed. *Lucre. Phyrus materno genere ab Achille, paterno ab Hercule.* Phyrus descended by the mothers Side from Achilles, by the fathers from Hercules. *Plin.*

## 3d. Of the Government of VERBS.

**V**ERBS Transitive govern an Accusative Case.  
*Labor omnia vincit.* Labour overcomes all things. *Virg. Iracundiam qui vincit, hostem superat maximum.* He that conquers his Passion, overcomes his greatest Enemy. *Syr. Hec Studia Adolescentiam alunt, Senectutem oblectant, secundas res ornant, adversis perfugium et Solatium præbent.* These Studies improve our Youth, entertain our old Age, adorn prosperity, afford a refuge and comfort in Adversity. *Cic. Superbia comitatur Honores.* Pride attends Honours. *Claud. Hanc metui, ne me criminaretur tibi.* I was afraid of her, lest she should accuse me to you. *Ter. \**

*Celo* with Verbs of *Asking, Teaching* and *Cloathing*, govern two Accusatives, one of the person and another of the Thing. as, *Ea ne me celet, consuefeci filium.* I have accustom'd my Son not to conceal those things from me. *Ter.*

*Rogat illa Jovem sine nomine munus.* She asks of Jove a Gift without a Name. *Ovid.*

\* *Obf.* Sometimes the Verb is understood by an *Elipsis*. as, *Dii meliora piis. f. dent Quid multa?* *Sc. Loquar.*

Sometimes the Accusative is understood. as, *Solus Iannio servat domi. i. e. res domi.* *Ter.*

*Nox humida celo præcipitat. i. e. te Virg.*

*Cum faciam vitula. i. e. Sacra. Virg.*

*Pacem*

*Pacem te poscimus omnes.* We all beg peace of you. *Virg. Quid nunc te, asine, Literas doceam?* Why now you Ass, should I teach you Letters? *Cic.*

*Ego istam volo me rationem edoceas.* I wou'd have you teach me that Method. *Plaut. Induit se calceos.* He put on his Shoes. *Ter.*

Verbs Passive of *Asking, Teaching* and *Cloathing* retain the Accusative of the Thing. *Is primum rogatus est Sententiam.* He was first asked his opinion. *Liv. Motus doceri gaudet Ionicos matura virgo* The grown Maid delights to be taught the Ionic Dance. *Hor. Indutus vestem.* Having put on his Cloaths.

Of Verbs that govern a Nominative.

**S**UM, *forem, fio, existo*; Verbs Passive of *calling*, and *Existimor, Habeor, Nascor, Putor, Salutor, Scribor, Videor*, with many others, have the same Case after 'em as before them.

*Sum. Senectus ipsa est morbus.* Old Age itself is a Disease. *Ter.*

*Forem. Et felicissima Matrum dicta foret Niobe.* And Niobe might have been call'd the most happy of Mothers. *Ovid.*

*Fit nova Cygnus avis.* Cygnus becomes a new Bird. *Ovid.*

*Fio. Sic mihi, si fias tu Leo, qualis eris?* Tell me if you was a Lyon, what a one will you be? *Mart.*

*Existo. Ego patronus hujus causæ exstiti.* I was the Advocate of this Cause. *Cic.*

*Vocor. Aristides vocabatur Justus.* Aristides was called Just.



Existimor. *Impudentissimus existimor.* I am reckoned very Impudent. *Cic.*

Habeor. *Virtus clara aeternaque habetur.* Virtue is accounted glorious and eternal. *Sall.*

Nascor. *A vobis natus sum Consularis.* By you I was made a Consular Gentleman. *Cic.*

Putor. *Prudens esse putatur.* He is thought to be prudent. *Cic.*

Salutor. *Cur ego Poeta salutor?* Why am I called a Poet? *Hor.* *Rex salutatus est.* He was saluted King.

Scribor. *Tu hostium victor scriberis.* You shall be celebrated Conqueror of the Enemy. *Hor.*

Videor. *Sunt quibus in Satyra videar nimis acer.* There are some, to whom in Satyr I may seem too severe. *Hor.*

In short almost all Verbs will have a Nominative after 'em, if the word that follows the Verb has any Reference to the word that went before. as,

*Victa jacet Pietas.* Piety lies vanquish'd.  
*Ovid. Ast ego, quæ Livum incedo Regina.*  
 But I, who move the Queen of Gods. *Virg. Nemo fere saltat sobrius.* Almost nobody dances when Sober. *Cic. Audivi hæc a parente meo puer.* I heard these things of my Father when a Boy. *Cic. Sapiens nihil facit invito, nihil coactus.* A wise man does nothing against his will, nothing forced. *Cic. \** Of

---

\* Obf. The Infinitive Mood esse will have the same Case after it as before it, whether it be Nominative, Accusative or Dative. as,

recte — no Genitive — Ex

Of Verbs that govern a Genitive.

**S**UM signifying belonging to, *Property*, *part*, or *Duty*, governs a Genitive. as,

*Hic Liber est fratris.* This Book is my Brothers. *Jam me Pompeii totum esse scis.*

Now you know that I am wholly Pompey's.

*Cic. Cujusvis hominis est errare.* It is the part of any Man to mistake. *Id. Adolefcentis est Majores natu revereri.* It is the Duty of a young Man to reverence his Elders. *Id.*

But the Adjectives Possessive are used in the Nominative. as,

*Non est mentiri meum.* It is not my part to lie. *Ter. Vestrum dare, vincere nostrum est.* It is your part to give, to conquer is ours.

*Hæc Domus est mea.* This House is mine.

In these Instances the Genitive is properly governed of a Substantive understood, The Nominative agrees with it. as, *Officium, Munus, Negotium, res, proprium, which are sometimes expressed ; or the foregoing Substantive may be repeated.* as,

*Hic Liber est Liber fratris. Hoc pecus est pecus Melibæi. Hæc Domus est mea Domus.*

*Exeat aula, qui volet esse pius. Lucan. Qui se volet esse potentem, animos domet ille feroces. Illis timidis et ignavis licet esse—vobis necesse est fortibus viris esse. Liv. Nolint atqui licet esse beatis. Hor.*

Sometimes it is otherwise. as, *Expedit bonas esse vobis Ter. for vos esse bonas.*

Also *Satago*, *Misereor*, *Misereſco*, govern a Genitive. as,

*Satago.* *Is quoque rerum ſuarum ſatagit.* He has buſineſs enough of his own. *Ter.*

*Misereor.* *Miſerere animi non digna ferentis.* Pity a mind ſuffering unworthily. *Virg.*

*Misereſco.* *Arcadii, quaſo, miſereſcite regis.* O Arcadians, I beſeech you, pity your King. *Virg.*

**T**HESE Verbs of remembering and forgetting, *Memini*, *recordor*, *reminiſcor*, *obliviſcor*, govern a Genitive or Accuſative.

*Memini.* *Ipſe jubet mortis te meminiffe Deus.* God himſelf commands thee to remember Death. *Mart.* *Numeros memini, ſi verba tenerem.* I remember the Tune, if I could tell the Words.

*Recordor.* *Ipſe certe cum aliquo dolore flagitiorum ſuorum recordabitur.* He will certainly call to mind his Crimes with ſome Remorſe. *Eſt operæ prætium Diligentiam Majorum recordari.* It is worth while to call to mind the Diligence of our Anceſtors. *Cic.*

*Reminiſcor.* *Reminiſceretur et veteris Incommodi populi Romani, et priſtinae virtutis Helvetiorum.* He might remember both the ancient Loſs of the Roman People, and the former Bravery of the Helvetians. *Cæſ.* *Ea potius reminiſcere, quæ digna tua perſona ſunt.* Rather Remember thoſe things, which are becoming your Charact. r. *Cic.*

*Obliviſcor.* *Eſt proprium ſtultitiæ aliorum vitiæ æcernere, obliſci ſuorum.* It is a piece of folly

ly to see the faults of others, and to forget their own. *Id. Oblivisci nihil soles, nisi Injurias.* You use to forget nothing but Injuries. *Id.*

Of Verbs that govern a Genitive and an Accusative.

**V**ERBS of *accusing, condemning, and warning*, govern an Accusative of the *person*, and a Genitive of the *Thing*.

*Accusing.* *Hic furti se alligat.* He accuses himself of Theft. *Ter. Qui alterum incusat probri, eum ipsum intueri oportet.* He that accuses another of a Crime, ought to look at himself. *Plaut.*

*Condemning.* *Parce tuum vatem sceleris damnare, Cupido.* Forbear, O Cupid, to condemn your Poet of a Crime. *Ovid. A Senatu Capitis damnatus est.* He was condemned by the Senate to die. *Suet.*

*Absolving.* *C. Cælius Judex absolvit eum Injuriarum.* C. Cælius the Judge absolved him of the Injuries. *Senatus nec liberavit ejus culpæ Regem, neque arguit.* The Senate neither acquitted the King of his fault, nor convicted him. *Liv.*

*Warning.* *Milites temporis ac necessitatis monet.* He puts the Soldiers in Mind of the Time and Necessity. *Tac. Grammaticos officii sui commonemus.* We admonish Gramarians of their Duty. *Quint.*

*These Verbs often have an Ablative with or without the Preposition de, of which the Genitive is governed. as,*

*De Veneficiis accusabantur. Cic.*

Suis

Suis certis propriisque criminibus accusabo. *Il.*

De vi condemnati sunt. *Il.*

Condemnabo eodem ego te crimine. *Cic.*

Latae deinde Leges, quæ Consullem regni suspitione absolverunt.

De quo vos paulo ante admonui. *Il.*

*Verbs of admonishing have sometimes two Accusatives. as.*

Sed eos hoc moneo, desinant furere. *Cic.*

Ridiculum est te istuc me admonere. *Ter.*

**V**ERBS of *esteeming* govern an Accusative of the person or thing esteemed, and a Genitive of the word signifying how much it is esteemed. *as,*

*Magni æstimabat pecuniam.* He valued Money at a great rate. *Cic. i. e. rem, or pro re magni pretii. Merito te semper maximi feci, Chreme.* I have always had a great Value for you, Chremes, and that not without reason. *Ter.*

*Obs. Sometimes the Verb æstimo governs an Allative. as,*

Data magno æstimas, accepta parvo. *Sen. i. e. pro magno pretio.*

Tu ista permagno æstimas. *Cic.*

*The Expressions are remarkable.*

Æqui bonique facio, boni Consul. *as,*

Equidem istuc, Chreme, æqui bonique facio. *Ter.*

Hoc munus rogo, quaecunque est, boni consul. *Sen.*

*Which may be set up in this manner.*



facio. i. ꝑ. Existimo officium æqui bonique animi.

Boni consulo. i. e. Censeo esse boni animi munus, *vel*-factum.

Of Verbs that govern a Dative.

**E**VERY Verb will require a Dative Case of the Person or thing, to, or for, which any thing is done. as,

*Non omnibus dormio.* I don't sleep for every Body. *Agō tibi gratias maximas.* I give you a Thousand Thanks. *Tibi aras, tibi occas, tibi seris, tibi eidem et metis.* Plaut. You plow for yourself, you harrow for yourself, you sow for yourself, you also reap for your self.

Verbs of giving, restoring, promising and paying, and *Sum* put for *Habeo*, govern a Dative. as,

Giving. *Da te mihi.* Give yourself to me.

*Ter. Fortuna multis nimium dedit, nulli satis.*

Fortune has given too much to many, to none enough.

Restoring. *Vitæ me redde priori.* Restore me to my former way of Life. *Hor. Ut suis restitutam ac reddam.* That I may return her and restore her to her Relations. *Ter.*

Promising. *Fac, promisi ego illis.* Do, I have promised them. *Ter. Illud tibi possum polliceri.* I can promise you that. *Cic. Jam enim totum quod tibi promiseram, præstici.* For now I have performed all that I had promised you. *Id.*

Paying. *Ut vota Herculi solvat.* That he might pay his vows to Hercules. *Just. Es alienum mihi*

*mibi numeravit.* He has paid me the Debt. *Cic.*

*Sum. Suus cuique mos est.* Every one has his own way. *Ter. Sunt nobis mitia poma.* We have ripe Apples. *Virg. An nescis longas regibus esse manus?* Don't you know that Kings have long Hands? *Ovid.*

*Sum, habeo, do, verto, duco, tribuo, relinquo,* and some others, have two Datives, one of the person, another of the Thing. as,

*Est mihi voluptati.* It is a pleasure to me.

*Hoc erit mihi curæ.* This shall be my Care.

*Habeo. Utrum studione id sibi habet, an laudi putat fore?* Does he do it out of Inclination, or does he think it an Honour to him? *Ter*

*Do. Fistula, Dametas dono mihi quam dedit olim.* *Vi.g.* The Pipe, which Dametas formerly gave me as a present.

*Verto. Nec timuit, sibi ne vitio quis verteret olim.* Nor was he afraid, lest any one should impute it to him as a fault. *Hor.*

*Duco. Tu nunc tibi id laudi ducis.* You reckon it an Honour to you.

*Tribuo. Quid illi tribuebatur Ignaviæ.* Which was imputed to his Idleness. *Cic.*

*Relinquo. Ea relicta huic arrhaboni est pro illo argento.* She was left with her as a pledge for that Money. *Ter.*

*Mitto. Miserunt mihi muneri.* They sent it me as a present. *Cic. Cæsar Numidas subsidio oppidanis mittit.* Cæsar sends the Numidians to the Relief of the Townsmen. *Cæs.*

*Sometimes the Dative of the Person is omitted.* as,

Ex-

Exemplo est magni formica Laboris. *The Ant to us is an Example of great Industry.*  
 Hor. Nobis.

Nucleum amisi, reliquit pignori putamina. *I have lost the Kernel, He has left the Shell in pawn.* Plaut. mihi.

**V**ERBS of anger, believing, commanding, comparing, congratulating, envying, favouring, flattering, forgiving, helping, indulging, meeting, obeying, persuading, pleasing, displeasing, threatening, trusting and upbraiding, govern a Dative.

Anger. *Merito mihi nunc succenseo.* Now I am justly angry with myself. Ter. *Dii immortales hominibus irasci consueverunt.* The immortal Gods are wont to be angry with Men. Cic.

Believing. *Venire tu me gaudes: Ego credo tibi.* You rejoice that I am come: I believe you. Plaut. *Credis huic, quod dicat?* Do you believe him, what he says? Ter.

Commanding. *Imperat Militibus armare se.* He commands the Soldiers to Arm. *Crede mihi, vobis imperat ista magis.* Believe me, it has a greater Command over you. Proper.

Comparing. *Sic parvis componere magna solebam.* So I used to compare great things with small. Virg. *Conferre hanc pacem cum illo Bello.* Compare this peace with that War. Cic. *Ne comparandus hic quidem ad illum est.* This is not fit to be compared to him. Ter.

Congratulating. *Gratulor tibi et mihi.* I congratulate you and myself. Ovid. *Gratulor tibi hanc*

*hanc rem.* I congratulate you upon this occasion. *Cic. De hac re. In hoc.* Cic

Envyng. *Invidet ipsa sibi.* She envies herself. *Ovid. Qui mihi videntur non solum vivis, sed etiam mortuis invidere.* Who seem to me to envy not only the living, but the Dead. *Cic.*

Favour. *Sententiae isti faveo.* I am of that opinion. *Cic. Qui diligebant hunc, illi favebant.* They that loved the one, favoured the other. *Id.*

Flatter. *Est parvi animi adulari Divitibus.* It is the part of a little mind to flatter the Rich. *Nisi forte te amant, et tibi assentantur.* Except they love you, and flatter you. *Cic.*

Forgiving. *Ignosce aliis multa, tibi nihil.* Forgive others many things, yourself nothing. *Nam praeteritis ignoscis.* For you forgive what is past. *Cic.*

Helping. *Non ignara mali miseris succurrere disco.* Not ignorant of Misfortunes, I learn to succour the Miserable. *Virg. Subvenire & opitulari patriae.* To relieve and help our Country. *Cic.*

Indulging. *Nimum illi, Menedeme, indulges.* You indulge him too much, Menedemus. *Ter. Huic Legioni Caesar indulserat praecipue.* Caesar had indulged this Legion in a particular Manner. *Cæs.*

Meeting. *Fuscus occurrit mihi Carus.* My dear Fuscus meets me. *Hor. Consiliis Catalinae occurri et obstiti.* I opposed and put a stop to the Designs of Cataline. *Cic.*

Obeying. *Pareat amor dictis charae Genetricis.*  
Cu-

Cupid obeys the Words of his dear Mother.  
*Virg. Mali serviunt voluptatibus, non fruuntur.* Bad Men are Slaves to their Pleasures, they don't enjoy them. *Parere tibi æquum est.* It is fit that I should obey you. *Virg.*

Persuading. *Te tibi persuadere volo, mihi neminem esse te chariorem.* I would have you persuade yourself, that there is nobody dearer to me than you. *Cic. Trebonio persuasi.* I have prevailed upon Trebonius. *Id.*

Pleasing. *Otia semper placuerunt mee menti.* Ease was alway agreeable to my Mind. *Ovid. Nos quoque senes est æquum senibus obsequi.* It is also fit that we old Men should oblige one another. *Ter.*

Displeasing. *Displiceo mihi, nec sine summo scribo Dolore* I displease myself, and never write without the greatest pain. *Cic.*

Profit. *Nihil Literæ meæ tibi proderunt.* My Letters will do you no Service. *Cic.*

Disprofit. *Indulgentia nobis nocet.* Indulgence is hurtful to us. *Ovid. Forma mihi nocuit.* Beauty was my misfortune. *Ovid.*

Denying. *Et patriæ rigida mente negavit opem.* And he refused Assistance to his Country with an inflexible Resolution. *Ovid.*

Telling. *Tu isti narrato omnem rem ordine.* Do you tell him all the Story in order. *Ter.*

Resisting. *Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat.* Fortune resists idle Prayers. *Arbor resistit ventis.* The Tree stands firm against the Winds. *Ovid.*

Shewing. *Jamne ostendisti signa Nutrici?* Have you shewn the Tokens to the Nurse? *Ter. Of-*  
*ten-*



*tendent terris hunc tantum fata* The fates shall only shew him to the World. *Virg.*

Sparing. *Qui vicit semper, victis ut parcere posset.* Who always conquered, that he might spare the Conqueror. *Ovid.* *Fortuna tibi pepercit.* Fortune has spared you. *Lucan.*

Taking away. *Homini fortuna opes eripere potest, virtutem non potest.* Fortune may take from a Man his riches, his virtue it cannot. *Inimici mei mea mihi, non meipsum ademerunt.* My Enemies have taken my fortune from me, but not myself. *Cic.*

Trusting. *O formosæ puer, nimium ne crede colori.* O Beautiful youth, trust not too much to your Beauty. *Virg.* *Sic & Europa deoſo credidit Tauro latus.* So alto Europa committed her Side to the deceitful Bull. *Hor.*

Threatening. *Crucem minatur illi.* He threatens him with the Croſs. *Cic.* *Minatur transfugis mortem.* He threatens the Deſerters with Death.

Upbraiding. *Trepidoque fugam exprobravit amico.* And upbraided his timorous friend with running away. *Ovid.*

Obſ. *Theſe four Verbs Jubeo, Juvo, Lædo, Offendo, don't govern a Dative but an Accuſative. as,*

*Dextraque Silentia juſſit.* And with his right hand he commanded Silence. *Lucan.* *Juvit facundia Cauſam.* Eloquence help'd to gain his Cauſe. *Ovid.* *Injuſte neminem læſit.* He hurt no one without a Cauſe.

Cur

Cur ego amicum offendam in Nugis? *Why should I offend my friend in Trifles?* Hor. 10 Adjuto.

Quod potero adjutabo, Senem. *I will assist the old Man, as much as lies in my Power.* Ter.

**S**EVERAL Verbs compounded with *præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter & super*; and also *satis, bene* and *male*, govern a Dative. as,

*Præ. Homo ceteris animantibus plurimum præstat.* Man far excels other Animals. *Cic. Ego meis majoribus virtute præluxi.* I have exceeded my Ancestors in Virtue. *Cic.*

*Ad. Aspirat primo fortuna Labori.* Fortune favours our first Attempt. *Virg. Sapiens se accommodat Naturæ.* A wise Man accommodates himself to Nature. *Cic.*

*Con. Puer gēstis paribus colludere.* A Boy delights to play with his Equals. *Hor. Oves Lupo commisit.* You have committed the Sheep to the Wolf. *Ter.*

*Sub. Cohortatur ne labori succumbant.* He encourages them not to sink under their Fatigue.

*Ces. Huic uni forsan potui succumbere culpæ.* To this one frailty I perhaps cou'd yield. *Virg.*

*Ante Virtus omnibus rebus antecit.* Virtue excels all things. *Plaut. Antecellimus Bestiis.* We excell the Brutes. *Cic.*

*Post Posthabui tamen illorum mea seria ludo.*

Yet I ~~postponed~~ my Businels to their Diversi-  
on. *Virg. Vos est postponere Natis ausa suis.*  
She dared to ~~postpone~~ you to her own Chil-  
dren. *Ovid. neglect — for —*

Ob. *Vitia nobis sub virtutis nomine obrepunt.*

Vice creeps upon us under the Name of Virtue.

Sen. *Paratus—certæ occumbere morti.* Prepared to yield to certain Death. *Virg.*

In. *Finem bello imposuit.* He put an end to the War. *Stat. Intulit bellum patriæ.* He made War upon his Country.

Inter. *Deus animis nostris interest.* God is present with our Minds. *Interfuit navali pugna.* He was present at the Sea-fight. *Nep.*

Super. *Timidis supervenit Ægle.* Ægle comes up to them, as they were afraid. *Virg. Munientibus supervenit Marcellus.* Marcellus came upon them, as they were fortifying. *Liv.*

Satis. *Ceteris satisfacio omnibus, mihi ipse nunquam satisfacio.* I satisfy all others, but never satisfy myself. *Cic.*

Bene. *Pulchrum est benefacere Reipublicæ.* It is a glorious thing to do well to the publick. *Sall.*

Male. *Cave sis, nescis cui maledicas nunc viro.* Take heed, you don't know what a Man you are talking against. *Ter. ‡*

**V**ERBS signifying *Motion*, instead of a Dative, have most commonly an Accusative after them with the Preposition *ad*: and also *Voco*,

‡ Obf. *Verbs compounded with ante and præ, sometimes govern an Accusative. as,*

*Qui eloquentia ceteros antecellis.* *Cic.*

*Praestat tamen ingenio alius alium.* *Quint.*

*In-*

*Invito, Provoco, Hortor, Pertineo, Specto, Laceresso*, and sometimes *Mitto*. as,

*Motion. Serius aut citius sedem properamus ad unam.* Sooner or later we are all hastening to the same Place. *Eamus ergo ad cœnam, quid stas?* Let us go then to Supper, why do you stand? *Ter. Ibam ad te.* I was going to you. *Ter.*

*Voco. Al Libertatem servos vocavit.* He invited the Slaves to Liberty. *Liv. Deinde ipsum regem ad cœnam vocavit.* Then he invited the King himself to supper. *Cic.*

*Invito. Invitavit populum ad Epulas.* He invited the People to a Feast. *Just.*

*Provoco. Provocavit hostem ad pugnam.* He provoked the Enemy to Battle. *Cic. Provoco ad populum.* I appeal to the People. *Liv.*

*Pertineo. Non est obscurum, ad quem suspicio maleficii pertineat.* 'Tis plain enough, to whom the suspicion of mischief belongs. *Cic.*

*Hortor. Al pacem hortari non desino.* I never cease to advise them to peace. *Cic. Cum ad laudem milites hortaretur.* Whilst he encouraged the Soldiers to Glory. *Il.*

*Specto. Al orientem spectat.* It lies towards the East. *Cæs. Consilium ejus ad Bellum spectat.* His advice tends to War. *Cic.*

*Laceresso. Laceressere ad pugnam.* To provoke to Battle. *Liv.*

*Mitto. Legatos ad me misit, se venturum.* He sent Messengers to me, that he would come. *Cic. Hastam misit in ora.* He thrust his Spear against his Face. *Ovid. Sub jugum mit-*

*mitti.* To be made to pass under the Yoke.  
*Cæs.* Sometimes a Dative. as,  
*Ego tibi aliquid de meis scriptis mittam.*  
 I will send you something of my writings.  
*Cic.*

### Of the Ablative Case.

**T**HE word that signifies the *Instrument, Cause, Manner, Means,* and *Respect* wherein, is put in the Ablative. as,

*Instrument.* *Cæsus est virgis Athenagoras.* Athenagoras was lash'd with rods. *Alexander Clitum hasta transfodit.* Alexander stabb'd Clitus with a Spear.

*Cause.* *Nam omnes sumus deteriores Licentia.* For we are all worse for too much Liberty. *Ter. Oderunt peccare Boni virtutis amore.* Good Men hate to Sin out of love to Virtue. *Hor.*

*Manner.* *Nec facile est æqua commoda mente pati.* It is not easy to bear Prosperity with an even mind. *Ovid. Mira celeritate rem peregit.* He performed the Business with wonderful Expedition.

*Means.* *Homines capiuntur voluptate.* Men are caught with pleasure. *Nunquam virtus vitio adiutanda est.* Virtue is never to be help'd out by vice.

*Respect.* *Præstat ingenio alius alium.* One exceeds another in parts. *Quint. Helvetii reli-*

*quos*



*quos Gallos virtute præcedunt.* The Helvetii excel the rest of the Gauls in bravery. *Cæs. †*

**T**HE word that signifies the *Price* is put after any Verb in the Ablative. as,  
*Viginti Talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit.* Isocrates sold one Oration for twenty pounds. *Vendidit auro patriam.* He sold his Country for Gold. *Virg.*

But these Genitives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, are used to signify the *price* without their Substantives. as,

*Vendo meum non pluris quam cæteri; fortasse etiam minoris.* I sell mine not for more than others, but perhaps for less. *Cic. Nonnunquam reputat quanti sibi gaudia constant.* She never considers how much her pleasure costs. *Juv.*

Sometimes the Ablatives, *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo*, are used with their Substantives. as,

*At permagno decumas ejus agri vendidisti.* But you sold the Tithes of that Land at a great rate. *Cic. Quid agas, nisi ut te redimas captum, quam queas minimo. si nequeas paululo, at quanti queas.* What shou'd you do, but redeem

† Obs. Sometimes the Cause and Manner are used with a Preposition. as,

*Nec loqui præ mærore potuit.* He could not speak for Grief. *Cic. Semper magno cum metu dicere incipio.* I always begin to speak with great fear. *Cic.*

yourself now you are taken prisoner for as little as you can ; if you can't for a little however for what you can. *Ter.* ||

**T**HE word that signifies the *Time when*, is put in the Ablative ; the *Time how long*, in the Accusative, and sometimes in the Ablative.

as,

*Time when. Prima luce.* At break of Day. *Cæs.*  
*Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.* No man is wise at all times. *Plin.* *Temporibusque malis ausus esse bonus.* You dared to be good in evil Times. *Mart.* *Quicquid est, biduo sciemus.* Whatever it is, we shall know in two Days. *Cic.*

Sometimes the Prepositions *in* or *de* are added. as,

*In tempore ad eam veni.* I came to her in the right time. *Ter.* *De quarta vigilia profec-*

|| *Obs.* The Ablative Case of the price is properly governed of the Preposition *pro* understood, which is sometimes expressed ; as,

*Plure foras vendunt, quod pro minore emptum.*

*Lucil.* So that the Genitive is governed of one Substantive in the Ablative, and agrees with another in the Genitive. as this Sentence,  
*Non vendo pluris quam cæteri, may be thus supplied : non vendo pro re pluris pretii quam cæteri.*

*At permagno decumas ejus agri vendidisti. i. e. pro permagno pretio.* And so of the rest.

How

*rus est.* He marched about the fourth watch.  
*Cæs.*

*How long.* *Annos septuaginta vixit Ennius.*  
Ennius lived 70 Years. *Cic. Noctes atque  
dies patet Janua Ditis.* The Gate of Pluto  
is open Night and Day. *Virg.*

*Accusative.* *Horum pater abhinc duos & viginti  
annos mortuus est.* Their Father dyed two and  
twenty Years ago. *Cic.*

*Ablative.* *Vixit annos viginti novem, impera-  
vit triennio, & decem mensibus, diebusque oc-  
to.* He lived nine and twenty Years, and reign-  
ed three Years, ten Months and eight Days.  
*Suet. Continuato & nocte & die Itinere.* Con-  
tinuing their March both Night and Day.  
*Cæs.* §

**T**HE word, that signifies the Distance of one  
place from another, is put in the Accusative,  
and sometimes in the Ablative. as,  
*Accusative.* *Is locus est citra Leucadem stadia  
centum viginti.* That place is an hundred and

§ *Obi.* Sometimes the Prepositions *per*, *ad*, in  
*or intra*, are used. as,

*Per.* *Sero resistimus ei, quem per annos decem  
aluimus contra nos*

*Ad.* *Bestiæ ex se natos amant ad quoddam tem-  
pus* *Id.*

*In.* *Habebit Senatus in hunc annum, quem se-  
quatur.* *Id.*

*Intra.* *Invisi Germani, qui intra annos quatu-  
ordecim rectam non subierint.* *Cæs.*

twenty furlongs on this side Leucas. *Cic. Negat unquam se a te pedem discessisse.* He declares that he has never stirr'd a foot from you. *Id. Tridui viam progressi, rursus reverterunt.*

After they had gone three Days journey, they came back again. *Cæs.*

*Ablative. Certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris millibus passuum quatuor & viginti abesse.* He was informed, that Ariovistus's forces were four and twenty Miles distant from ours. *Cæs. Non longius bidui via aberant.* They were not above two Days March off. *Cæs.*

**T**HE *Agent* or *Doer* after a Verb or Participle Passive is put in the Ablative, with *a*, *ab* or *abs*, before it. as,

*Miser est, qui a nullo diligitur.* He is miserable, who is beloved by no one. *Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.* He is commended by some, blamed by others. *Hor. Meum factum probari abs te, gaudeo.* I rejoice that my Action is approved by you. *Cæs. \**

## VERBS

---

*\* Obs. This Ablative in a Passive Sentence is changed in an Active Sentence into the Nominative. as,*

*Ego laudo te. Tu laudaris a me. Nos diligimus virtutem virtus diligitur a nobis. Romulus condidit Urbem Romam. Urbs Roma a Romulo condita fuit.*

*Sometimes the Dative is used after Verbs Passive, as,*

Bar-

**V**ERBS of *abounding, wanting, filling, emptying, loading, unloading, binding, loosing, depriving, robbing, spoiling, govern an Ablative.*

as,

**Abounding.** *Abundat copia frumenti.* It abounds in plenty of Corn. *Cæs. Abundat Divitiis.* He abounds in Riches. *Ter.*

**Wanting.** *Carere debet omni vitio, qui in aliorum paratus est dicere.* He ought to be free from all fault, who is ready to speak against another. *Cic. Non tali auxilio, nec Defensoribus istis tempus eget.* The time does not want such Assistance, nor such Defenders. *Virg.*

**Filling.** *Implevit mero pateram.* She fill'd the Bowl with Wine. *Il. Mundum bonis omnibus explevit Deus.* God has fill'd the World with all good things. *Cic.*

**Emptying.** *Nulla vite pars vacare officio potest.* No part of Life can be free from Duty. *Cic.*

**Loading.** *Naves onerant auro.* They load their Ships with Gold. *Virg. Pars epulis onerant Mensas.* Part load the Boards with dainty Dishes. *Id.*

**Unloading.** *Epistola tua me ægritudine levavit.* Your Letter has eas'd me from much concern. *Cic. Exonera civitatem vano metu.* Deliver the City from needless fear. *Liv. Ego hoc te*

*Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli.*  
*Ovid.*

*Nulla tuarum audita mihi, nec visa fororum.*  
*Virg.*

*fas*



*fascē levabo.* I will ease you of this burden.  
*Virg.*

**Binding.** *Una atque altera estas potest totam Galliam sempiternis vinculis astringere.* One or two Campaigns may reduce all Gaul into perpetual Slavery. *Cic.*

**Loosing.** *Ergo omnis longo solvit se Teucra luctu.* Therefore all Troy from long restraint is freed. *Virg.* *Illas errore & te simul suspitione exolvās.* You may free them from their mistake, and yourself also from suspicion. *Ter.*

**Depriving.** *Illam vita spoliavit Achilles.* Achilles deprived him of his Life. *Virg.* *Dicitur oculis se privasse.* He is said to have deprived himself of his Eyes. *Cic.*

**Robbing.** *Miserum sua blanditia privavit bonis, honore atque amicis.* By his fair Speeches he robb'd the poor Man of his Estate, honour and friends. *Plaut.*

**Spoiling.** *Spoliavit eum vita, pariter ac Regno.* He deprived him of his Life, together with his Kingdom. *Just.* *Ægritudo me somno privat.* Trouble deprives me of Sleep. *Cic.* ||

FUNGOR

|| *Obf. Verbs of abounding, filling and wanting, govern also sometimes a Genitive. as, Abounding.* *Quarum & abundemus rerum & quarum indigemus.* *Lucil*

*Filling.* *Cum compleatur jam Mercatorum carcer effct.* *Liv.*

Im-

**F**UNGOR, *defungor. fruor, utor, abutor, glorior, gaudeo, letor, exulto, nitor potior, prosequor. communico, dignor, afficio, fido, beo, vivo, victito, vescor, muto, commuto, sto, confio, dono, impertio, creor supersedeo, spargo & libero*, govern an Ablative.

*Fungor. Eodem illo munere fungebatur.* He performed the very same Office. *Cæs. Quatuor creati sunt, omnes jam functi eo honore.* Four were chose, who had all born that Office. *Liv.*

*Defungor. Defunctos fato dixit.* He said that they were dead. *Liv.*

*Fruor. Aëvo sempiterno beati fruuntur.* The Blessed enjoy eternal Life. *Cic.*

*Utor. Si fortuna permittitis uti.* If you will permit us to try our fortune. *Juno his vocibus usa est.* Juno used these words. *Virg.*

*Abutor. Quousque tandem abutere, Catalina, patientia nostra?* How long, Cataline, will you abuse our Patience? *Cic.*

*Glorior. Stulti vitiis gloriantur.* Fools boast in their Vices.

*Gaudeo. Numero Deus impare gaudet.* The God delights in unequal Numbers. *Virg. Vir bonus pœna non gaudet.* A good man does not delight in Punishment.

*Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinx.* *Virg.*

*Wanting. Quasi tu hujus indigeas patris.* *Ter.*  
*Non tam aris indigent, quam Laboris.* *Cic.*  
*Læ-*

**Lætor.** *Aspice venturo lætentur ut omnia seculo.*  
Behold, how all things rejoice at the approaching Age. *Virg.*

**Exulto.** *Nimis exultavit secundis rebus.* He exulted too much in Prosperity. *Sen.*

**Nitor.** *Virtute decet, non sanguine niti,* It becomes you to rely on virtue, not on blood. *Claud.*

**Potior.** *Egressi optata potiuntur Troes arena.*  
The Trojans landing gain the welcome Shore. *Virg.*

**Prosequor.** *Præsentia Invidia, præterita veneratione prosequimur.* We envy things present, esteem things past. *Vel. Pat.*

**Communico.** *Communicabo te semper mensa mea.*  
I will always make you welcome at my Table. *Plaut.*

**Dignor.** *Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.*  
Indeed I don't think myself worthy of so much honour. *Virg.*

**Afficio.** *Magna lætitia nationes omnes affecit.*  
He fill'd all Nations with great Joy. *Cic.*

**Fido.** *Non aper irasci meminit, non fidere Cursu Cerva.* The bear forgets to be angry, the Stag to trust his Heels. *Ovid.*

**Confido.** *Natura loci confidebant.* They depended upon the Nature of the Place. *Cæs.*

**Beo.** *Latiumque beabit divite Lingua.* And shall bless Latium with a beautiful Language. *Hor.*

**Vivo.** *Sed lacte & carne vivunt.* But they live on milk and flesh. *Cæs.*

**Viçtito.** *Mirum est viçtitare te lolio, tam vili tri-*

*tritico.* 'Tis a wonder you should live on Darnel, when Wheat is so cheap. *Plaut.*

*Vescor.* *Munere Terræ vescimur.* We live upon the Gifts of the Earth. *Hor.* *Lacte, caseo, carne, vescor.* I eat milk, cheese and flesh. *Cic.*

*Muto.* *Nec otia divitiis Arabum muto.* Nor wou'd I change my ease for the riches of Arabia. *Hor.*

*Commuto.* *Qui fidem suam & Religionem pecunia commutavit.* Who changed his honour and Religion for Money. *Cic.*

*Mortem cum vita mutare.* *Cic.* to die.

*Sto.* *Fiducia belli Palladis auxiliis semper stetit.* The only hopes of the War always depended on Minerva's aid. *Virg.*

*Consto.* *Medicina tota constat Experimentis.* Physick depends wholly upon Experiments. *Quint.*

*Dono.* *Hoc juvenem egregium præstanti munere donat.* And with this excelling Gift distinguishes the well deterving Youth. *Virg.*

*Impertio.* *Neque adveniens, neque proficiscens, quenquam osculo impertivit.* He neither saluted any one at his coming, nor going. *Suet.*

*Creor.* *Fortes creantur fortibus & bonis.* Brave men are produced from brave and good. *Hor.*

*Superfedeo.* *Cæsar pralio supersedere statuit.* Cæsar resolved to forbear fighting. *Cæs.*

*Spargo.* *Spargite humum foliis.* Straw the Ground with Leaves. *Virg.*

**Libero.** *Virtus metu mortis homines liberat.*  
 Virtue delivers men from the fears of Death. †

**A** Proper name of a *Town* or *City* signifying the place *whither* is the Accusative; The place from *whence* is the Ablative; the place

† Obs. *Fungor, fruor, utor, abutor & vescor, govern an Accusative. as,*

*Fungor.* Sine me fungi fortunas meas. *Plaut.*

Neque boni, neque liberalis functus officium est viri. *Ter.*

*Fruor.* Fruitur hanc alternas noctes. *Plaut.*

*Utor.* Mea, quæ præter spem evenere, utantur sine. *Ter.*

*Abutor.* In prologis scribundis operam abutitur. *Ter.*

*Vescor.* Aves nonnullæ vescuntur ea, quæ rapuere pedibus. *Plin.*

Sic utque sacras innoxia laurus vescor. *Tibul.*

Potior governs a Genitive & sometimes an Accusative. as,

*Genitive.* Totius Galliæ sese potiri posse sperant. *Cæs.*

Dum civitas Atheniensium rerum potita est.

*Cic. never* rebus.

Votique potitus evicto Fabius Pæno. *Sil.*

Ille alter sine Labore patria potitur commoda. *Ter.*

Sceptra potitus : Lucret : Regnum potitus. *Just.*

*where*



where, if it be of the first or second Declension and Singular Number, is the Genitive ; but if it be of the third Declension or plural Number, it is the Ablative. as,

Whither. *Romam, Corinthum, Thebas, Carthaginem.*

Whence. *Roma, Corintho, Thebis, Carthagine.*

Where. *Romæ, Corinthi, Thebis, Carthagine.*

Whither *Capuam flectit Iler.* He turns his March to Capua. *Liv. Regulus Carthaginem rediit.* Regulus returned to Carthage. *Cic.*

Whence. *Accepi Roma fasciculum Literarum.* I have received from Rome a Packet of Letters. *Cic. Servium discessisse Athenis moleste tuli.* I was troubled, that Servius was gone from Athens.

Where. *Romæ nutriri mihi contigit atque doceri.* It was my fortune to be brought up and educated at Rome. *Hor.*

*Is habitat Mileti.* He dwells at Miletus. *Ter. Dionysius Tyrannus Syracusis expulsus Corinthi pueros docuit.* Dionysius the Tyrant, being banished from Syracuse, taught Children at Corinth. *Cic.*

*Alexander Babylone mortuus est.* Alexander died at Babylon. *Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis.* Philip is at Naples, Lentulus at Puteoli. *Il. Quoniam Delphis oracula cessant.* Since Oracles are ceased at Delphi. *Juv.*

**D**OMUS and Rus follow the same Rule.  
as,

Whi-

Whither. *Ite Domum saturæ, Venit Hesperus, ite capellæ.* Go, my ted Goats; the Evening comes, go home. *Virg. Rus eun denuo abigam.* I will drive him into the Country again. *Ter.*

Whence. *Nuncius ei domo venit.* A Messenger came to him from home. *Nep. Video rure redeuntem senem.* I see the old Man coming out of the Country. *Ter.*

Where. *Ego domi ero, si quid me voles.* I shall be at home, if you want me. *Ter.*  
*Rure ego viventem, tu dicis in urbe beatum.* I say, he that lives in the Country is happy, you say, in the City. *Hor. Ruri fere se continebat.* He kept himself in the Country. *Ter.*

**H**UMI, *militiæ & belli* signifying *where* are also used in the Genitive.

*Qui legitis flores, & humi nascentia fraga.* You, who gather flowers, and Strawberryes, growing on the ground. *Virg. Una semper militiæ & domi fuimus.* We were always together both at home and in War. *Ter.*  
*Vel belli vel domi.* Either in War or peace. *Cic.*

**P**ROPER Names of *Islands* and *Countries* are often used in the same manner, without a Preposition. as,

Whither. *Inde Sardiniam cum classe venit.* From thence he came with a fleet to Sardinia. *Cic.*  
*Pausaniam cum classe Cyprum atque Hellespontum miserunt.* They sent Pausanias with a fleet to Cyprus and the Hellespont. *Nep.*

Whence

- Whence. *Litteræ deinde Macedonia allatæ.* After that Letters were brought from Macedonia.  
*Liv. Germanicus Ægypto remeans.* Germanicus returning from Ægypt. *Tac.*  
 Where. *Mea mater habitat Rhodi.* My Mother dwells at Rhodes. *Ter. Duos filios suos Ægypti occisos cognovit.* He was informed that his two Sons were slain in Ægypt. *V. Max.*

**B**UT the Preposition is most commonly used.  
 as,

Whither *Nobis iter est in Asiam.* We are to go into Asia. *Cic. Te in Epirum saluum venisse gaudeo.* I am glad that you are come safe into Epire. *Id.*

Whence. *Ab Europa petis Asiam; ex Asia transis in Europam.* You go from Europe into Asia; from Asia you pass into Europe. *Cic. Ex urbe tu rus habitatum migres.* You may remove out of the City to dwell in the Country. *Ter.*

Where *In Lemno uxorem duxit.* He married a Wife at Lemnos. *Id. Lucus in urbe fuit.* There was a grove in the City. *Virg. \**

Of

\* Obf. That proper Names of Towns have also frequently Prepositions added to them. as,  
 Whither. *Adoleſcentulus miles profectus ſum ad Capuam, quintoque anno poſt ad Tarentum Queſtor.* *Cic.*

Whence. *Ex Epheso huc ad meum ſodalem litteras miſi.* *Plaut.*

## Of the Ablative Absolute.

**A** Noun, having no other word expressed of which it may be governed, is put in the Ablative Absolute: *Having, after, when, whilst, & being*, are signs of the same before a Verb Transitive as,

*Having Cyrus, subacta Asia & universo Oriente in potestatem redacto, Scythis bellum infert.* Cyrus, having subdued Asia, and reduced all the East under his power, makes war upon the Scythians. *Iust.*

*Cæsar, equitatu præmissso, subsequēbatur omnibus copiis* Cæsar, having sent his Horse before, followed with all his forces. *Cæs.*

*After. Hoc responso dato, discessit.* After he had given this answer, he departed. *Cæs. Hoc præ-*

*A Brundisio nulla adhuc fama venerat. Cic.*

*Where. Qui nunc in Epheso est. Plaut.* In oppido Antiochiæ. *Cic.* Sed Neapoli in celeberrimo oppido. *Cic.*

*Hence it appears that the Genitive signifying the place where, is governed of a Substantive understood; and the Ablative agrees with it: which Ablative is properly governed of a Preposition. as,*

*Romæ, is the same as in urbe Romæ. Antiochiæ, in oppido Antiochiæ. Carthagine, in urbe Carthagine.*

*Domi, in loco Domi. Militiæ bellicque, in tempore Militiæ bellicque.*

*lio facto, - legatos ad Cesarem miserunt.* After this Battle was fought, they sent Ambassadors to Cæsar. *Id.*

When. *His constitutis rebus, tertia fere Vigilia solvit.* When these things were settled, He set Sail about the third Watch. *Id. Itaque veste deposita, descendit in flumen.* Therefore when he had put off his Cloaths, he went down into the River. *Curt.*

Whilst. *Jamque cinis, vivis fratribus, Hector erat.* And now Hector was reduced to Ashes, whilst his Brothers were alive. *Ovid. Silvam tu Scantium vendas, nobis Consulibus?* Wou'd you sell the Scantian Wood, whilst we are Consuls?

Being. *Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes, per paucis vulneratis, se in castra receperunt.* Our Men came back to the Camp, all safe to a Man, a very few only being wounded. *Cæs. Tacente Rege, Legati verba fecerunt.* The King being silent, the Embassadors spoke.

*Patron, desperata salute regis, ad eos rediit.* Patron despairing of the Kings safety, returned to them. *Curt. Pauci Regem sequebantur, sed equis deficientibus, cursum ejus adæquare non potuerunt.* A few followed the King, but their Horses failing them, they were not able to keep up with him. *Curt.*

So. *Rege Latino, regnante Saturno, Jove æquo.*  
*Hr. Deo duce, Invicta Minerva, Me ignaro,*  
*Cælo sereno, aspera hyeme.*

*Sometimes the Participle is used alone without a Substantive.*



Alexander, audito Darium movisse ab Ecbataniis, fugientem insequi pergit. *Curt. It agrees with the Sentence. Excepto quod non similes, cætera lætus. Hor.*

**Obs.** *If the Verb be Deponent, the Participle is used in the Nominative, agreeing with its Substantive, not in the Ablative. as,*

Nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere Vigilia solvit. *Cæs. not Nacta tempestate.*

Boii & Tulingi ex Itinere nostros aggressi circumvenire.

Id conspicati Helvetii prælium redintegrare ceperunt. *Id.*

Aggressi injiciunt ipsis ex vincula fertis. *Virg.*

Majus adorta nefas, evolat. *Virg.*

Ita defuncti oraculi responso, diu urbem possederunt.

*This Ablative Absolute may be resolved into the Nominative and Indicative or Subjunctive Mood, with the Conjunctions cum, postquam, si, or the like. as,*

Pythagoras, Superbo regnante, in Italiam venit.

*i. e.* Cum Superbus regnabat, or regnaret.

Nil desperandum Teucro duce & auspice Teucro.

*i. e.* Si Teucer fit dux. *As it appears in this Sentence.*

Brutii, Lucanique, cum auxilia a finitimis contraxissent, acrius bellum repetivere. *instead of contractis auxiliis.*

*In short, this Ablative is in reality governed of a Preposition understood, which is sometimes expressed. as,*

Sub principe Nerva. *Mart.*

Sub Caelio Auctore. *V. Max.*

Cum Diis bene juvantibus, arma capite. *Liv.*

*Obs. Instead of the Ablative Absolute, or two Verbs with a Conjunction Copulative between 'em, one Verb is more elegantly used, with the Participle of the Perfect Tense agreeing with its Substantive in the Accusative. as,*

Convocatos duces copiarum docet. *Instead of*  
Convocatis ducibus copiarum, eos docet. *or*  
Duces copiarum convocat & docet.

## Of the Government of VERBS IMPERSONAL.

SEVERAL VERBS IMPERSONAL govern a Dative. *as,*

Licet. *Aliis si licet, tibi non licet.* If others may, you ought not. *Ter.*

Libet. *Insanire libet quoniam tibi.* Since you have a mind to be mad. *Virg.*

Contingit. *Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.* It is not every Mans Lot to go to Corinth. *Hor.*

Convenit. *Convenit mihi tecum.* I agree with you.

**Expedi.** *Omnibus bonis expedit, salvam esse Rempublicam.* It is necessary for all good Men, that the Commonwealth should be safe.

**Stat.** *Stat mihi casus renovare omnes.* I resolve all Dangers to renew. *Virg.*

**Vacat.** *Non vacat exiguis rebus adesse Jovi.* Jove has not leisure to mind small affairs. *Ovid.*

**I**nterest and Refert, govern a Genitive of all other words, except *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra & c.* as,

**Interest.** *Interest omnium recte agere.* It concerns all Men to do well. *Cic.*

**Refert.** *Uxoris refert, quid rerum gerat maritus nosse.* It concerns a Wife, to know what her Husband does. *Id.* *Et tua & mea maxime Interest, te valere.* It very much concerns both you and me, that you be well. *Cic.* *Quid tua id refert?* What does that concern you? *Ter.* *Illud mea magni interest, te ut videam.* It much concerns me to see you. *Cic.* *Ferunt dicere solitum, non tam sua, quam Reipublicæ interesse, uti salvus esset.* They tell us he used to say, that the publick were more concerned in his safety, than himself.

**M**iseret, pudet, piget, pœnitet & cœdet, govern an Acculative of the Person, and a Genitive of the Thing. as,

**Miseret.** *Miseret te aliorum, tui nec miseret nec pudet.* You pity others, but neither pity, nor are ashamed of yourself. *Ter.*

**Pudet.** *Non te horum pudet?* Are you not ashamed of these things?

Piget. } *Me Civitatis morum piget tædetque.* I  
 Tædet } am sorry and grieved for the Manners  
 of the City. *Sall.*

Pœnitet. *Pœnituit eum facti.* He was sorry for  
 what he had done. *Iust. Meæ fortune pœni-*  
*tet me.* I am not content with my fortune.

**D***ecet, delectat, juvat & oportet,* govern an  
 Accusative.

*Decet. Omnia prius experiri, quam armis, sapi-*  
*entem decet.* It becomes a wise man to try all  
 methods, before he comes to War. *Ter.*

*Delectat. Me pedibus delectat claudere Verba.*  
 I delight to make Verses. *Hor.*

*Juvat. Me juvat in prima coluisse Helicon ju-*  
*venta.* It is a pleasure to me to have frequent-  
 ed Helicon in my youth. *Id.*

*Oportet. Mendacem memorem esse oportet. A*  
 Lyar ought to have a good memory. *Quint.*

*Decet* sometimes has a Dative. as,  
*Ita nobis decet. Ter Adolescens præfatur ela-*  
*tius, quam ætati ejus decebat. Gell.*

But *attinet, pertinet* and *spectat,* are used  
 with the Preposition *ad,* and the Accusative.  
 as,

*Attinet. Nihil ad me attrinet.* It signifies nothing  
 to me. *Ter.*

*Pertinet. Et ad tuam fidem & ad Remp. perti-*  
*net, me conservari.* Both your Honour, and  
 the publick are concerned in my preservation.  
*Cic.*

*Spectat.* *Spectat ad omnes bene vivere.* All are concerned to live well.

Obf. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, are sometimes used impersonally with an Accusative. as, *Non te fallit.* You know very well. *Cic.*

*Fugit me ad te antea scribere.* I forgot to write to you before. *Plin.*

*Nec me præterit,* Nor am I Ignorant. *Id.*

*Latet plerisque.* Most People are Ignorant. *Sen.*

### Of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

**W**HEN two Verbs come together, without a Conjunction between 'em, the Latter is the Infinitive. as,

*Improbis est homo qui beneficium scit sumere, & reddere nescit.* He is a wicked man, who knows how to receive a favour, and not to return it. *Plant.*

*Nonne emori per virtutem præstat, quam vitam miseram atque inbonestam per dedecus amittere?* Is it not better to die bravely, than to lose a miserable & dishonorable Life in a disgraceful manner? *Sall. \**

\* Obf. *The Infinitive is often put after Adjectives, especially among the Poets. as,*

*Pars & certare parati.* *Virg.* Horatius fere solus legi dignus. *Quint.* Indocilis pauperiem pati. *Hor.* Sed puer est; ætas mollis & apra regi. *Quid.* The



The Infinitive Active after *Sum*, is made by the future in *Rus*.

*Profecturus sum Romam*. I am to go to Rome.

*Scripturus sum Literas*. I am to write Letters.

The Infinitive Passive after *sum* by the future in *Dus*. as,

*Ejicienda est hæc mollities animi*. This Softness of mind is to be cast off. *Ter. Chremes est mihi exorandus*. Chremes is to be prevail'd upon by me. *Il*.

The Infinitive Passive signifying the End, by *ut* and the Subjunctive.

*Venit ad urbem, ut Consul crearetur*. He came to Town to be chose Consul.

The Infinitive Active by *ut* and the Subjunctive or the Relative *Qui*.

*Cursores miserunt, ut nuntiaret, quam celeri opus esset auxilio*. They sent a Courier, to tell them, what speedy assistance they had need of. *Cor. Nep*.

*Mardonium reliquit in Græcia, ut agros uret*. He left Mardonius in Greece, to burn their Lands. *Curt*.

*Legatos misit, qui agerent de pace*. He sent Embassadors to treat of Peace.

*Caduceatorem præmisit, qui denuntiaret*. He sent before a Herald, to threaten them. *Curt*.

Sometimes by the Gerund in *Dum* or participle in *Dus*. as,

*Alexander ad conducendum militem Cleandrum cum pecunia misit*. Alexander sent Cleander, with Money to raise Soldiers. *Concurrunt ad delenda præsidia Persarum*. They flock together to cut off the Garrisons of the Persians. *Curt*, Par-

**P**ARTICIPLES, Gerunds and Supines, govern the same Cases as the Verbs they come from.  
as,

**Participle.** *Quidam nominatus Poeta.* One call'd a Poet. *Cic. Heu regni rerumque oblite tuarum.* Ah, thoughtless, unconcerned for thine own Kingdom, and thine own Affairs. *Virg. Crescit indulgens sibi Hydrops.* The Dropsy encreaseth by indulging itself. *Hor. Non inferiora secutus.* Not following inferior Things *Virg. Malo virum pecunia, quam pecuniam viro indigentem.* I had rather have a man wanting money, than money wanting a man. *Val. Max.*

**Gerunds.** *Parcendum est teneris.* The young must be spared. *Juv. Ætoli consilium ceperunt Lacedæmonem occupandi.* The Ætolians formed a Design of seizing Lacedæmon. *Liv. Utendum est ætate.* We must make use of our Time. *Ovid*

**Supines.** *Aut Graiis servitum matribus ibo.* Nor go to serve the Græcian Dames. *Virg. Legati ab Roma venerunt questum Injurias.* Embassadors came from Rome to complain of the Injuries. *Liv. Romanos, ait, usu rerum necessariarum & dignitate spoliatum iri.* He says, that the Romans wou'd be deprived of the use of things necessary, and their Honour. *Cæs.*

## OF GERUNDS.

**G**ERUNDS are properly Verbal Nouns, and are used in all Cases but the Vocative.

The Gerund in *Dum* of the Nominative with the Verb *Eſt* has a Dative after it. as,

*Dum. Si vis me flere, dolendum eſt primum iſſi tibi.* If you wou'd have me weep, you muſt be concerned yourſelf. *Hor. Prope adeſt, cum alieno more vivendum eſt mihi.* The time is almoſt come, when I muſt live after the humour of another.

Oſtentimes the Dative is underſtood. as, *Orandum eſt, ut ſit mens ſana in Corpore ſano. tibi.* You muſt pray, that you may have a ſound mind in a ſound Body. *Juv. Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites, eſt. vobis.* Here, my Lads, you muſt either conquer or die.

The Gerund in *Li* is governed of Subſtantives or Adjectives.

*Di. Amor ſceleratus habendi.* The curſed Love of getting Money. *Ovid. Et quæ tanta fuit Romam tibi cauſa videndi?* And what was the cauſe of your ſeeing Rome? *Virg. Sum cupidus te audiendi.* I am deſirous of hearing you. *Cic. Docendi peritus.* A ſkilful teacher. *Quint. Inſuetus navigandi.* Unuſed to ſailing. *Cæſ. Certus eundi.* Retolved to go. *Virg. Athenas erudiendi gratia miſſus eſt.* He was ſent

sent to Athens upon the account of being educated. †

The Gerund in *Do* of the Dative Case is used after Adjectives of *profit* or *fitness*. as,

*Do. Charta emporetica est inutilis scribendo.*

Cap paper is unfit for writing. *Plin. Nullum semen ultro quadrimum utile est ferendo.* No seed above four Years old is fit for sowing. *Plin.*

Sometimes the Adjective is omitted. as,

*Radix ejus vescendo est decocta.* i. e. *apta.* It's root when boil'd is good to be eaten. *Plin.*

*Cum civitates solvendo non essent.* i. e. *habiles.* When the Cities were not able to pay.

*Cic.*

The Gerund in *Dum* of the Accusative is governed of the Prepositions *ad* or *inter*; sometimes of *ante*, *circa* or *ob*. as,

*Dum. Ne praeceps sis ad loquendum.* Be not too hasty in speaking. *Stultissimum est ad imitan-*

† *Obs. Instead of the Gerund in Di, the Infinitive is sometimes used, especially by the Poets.* as,  
*Tempus est abire, occasio scribere, cupidus mori, peritus cantare &c for abeundi, scribendi, cantandi.*

*Sometimes the Gerund in Di has after it a Genitive plural.* as,

*Facultas agrorum suis latronibus condonandi.*

*Cic. Cum illorum videndi gratia me in forum contulissem. Plin.*

*dum*

*dum non optima quæque proponere.* It is a very foolish thing not to propose the best Examples for Imitation. *Inter agendum, Inter cænanandum.* Virg. *Ante domandum.* Id. *Circa movendum.* Quint. *Ob absolvendum.*

The Gerund in *Do* of the Ablative is used to signify the manner or means; and sometimes with the Prepositions, *a, ab, de, e, ex, in & cum,* as,

*Do. Memoria excolendo augetur.* The memory is improved by exercising it Quint. *Ego vapulando, ille verberando, usque ambo defessi sumus.* We were both weary, I with being beaten, He with beating me. Ter. *Defessus sum ambulando.* I am weary with walking. Id. *Cæardando & ignoscendo; Cato nihil largiundo, gloriam adeptus est.* Cæsar acquired Glory by Generosity and Clemency; Cato, by refusing to bribe the People. Sall.

*A scribendo, ab invidendo, de transeundo in Fipirum, ex defendendo, in scribendo, Ratio recte scribendi juncta cum loquendo est.* Quint. \*

OF

---

\* Obs. If the Verb be Transitive, Gerunds are elegantly changed into the participles in *Dus*, agreeing with the Noun following in Case, Gender & Number. as,

*Nominative.* Ejiciunda est hæc mollities animi. Ter.

*Genitive.* Inita Consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi.

Cic.

Tan-



## Of the SUPINES.

**T**HE first Supine in *um* is used after Verbs of Motion. as,  
*Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.*  
 They come to see, they come to be seen themselves. *Ovid. Eo venatum.* I am going a hunting. *Quid te is perditum?* Why do you go about to ruin yourself? *Jer. Dum paucis scelestis parant, bonos omnes perditum eunt.* Whilst they spare a few villains, they go about to ruin all honest men. †

**T**HIS Supine may be varied many other ways.  
 as,

1. *Venit oratum opem.* 2. *Venit opem orandi causa.* 3. *Venit opis orandæ causa.* 4. *Venit ad orandum opem.* 5. *Venit ad orandam o-*

*Tantus amor florum, & generandi gloria mel-  
 lis. Virg*

*Dative.* *Dummodo perpetiundo labori fit Idoneus. Collum.*

*Accusative.* *Vivis, & vivis, non ad deponendam, sed ad confirmandam audaciam.*

*Ablative.* *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficies pleniorcm. Cic.*

† *Obt. Of this Supine and the Infinitive iri is made the future of the Infinitive passive. as,*

*Brutum, ut scribis, vitum iri a me puto. Cic.*

*Postquam audierat, non datum iri filio uxorem suo. Jer.*

*penz*

*pem.* 6. *Venit opem oraturus.* 7. *Venit qui opem oret.* 8. *Venit opem orare.* But the last is almost peculiar to the Poets.

**T**HE latter Supine in *U* is used after an Adjective. as,  
*Difficile dictu est.* It is hard to say. *Cic. Quod optimum factu videbitur, facies.* You will do what seems best to be done. *Id. Qui pecunia non movetur, hunc dignum spectatu arbitramur.* We think that man worthy of regard, who is not influenced by money. *Incredibile dictu.* Incredible. *Mirabile dictu.* Wonderful. ||

---

### Of the Construction of ADVERBS.

**A**DVERBS may be joined to most other parts of Speech.

Verbs. *Bonis quod bene fit, haud perit.* Plaut.

*Male parta male dilabuntur.* Cic.

Participles. *Fortiter pugnans : Graviter sauciatus.*

*Bene re gesta salvus redeo.* Plaut.

Nouns. *Vir apprime nobilis.* Ter. *Servus egregie fidelis.* Cic.

---

|| Obs. It may be resolved by the Infinitive passive or Gerund in *Dum*.

*Ardua Imitatu, cæterum cognosci utilia.* Val. Max.

*Hæc ad judicandum sunt facillima.* Cic.

No-

*Homerus plane orator. Cic. Admodum puella.*  
*Liv.*  
 Adverbs. *Minus multo audacter. Ter. Sat cito,*  
*si sat bene. Cato.*

### Of the Government of ADVERBS.

**A**DVERBS of *time* *Quantity* and *place* govern a Genitive.

*Time. Te interea loci cognovi. Ter.*

*Postea loci Consul pervenit in oppidum. Sall.*

*Inde loci mortalia secla creavit. Lucret.*

*Ex gente obscura tunc temporis. Just.*

*Quantity. Se jampridem potentiae gloriaeque abunde adeptum. Suet.*

*Tibi Divitiarum affatim est. Plaut.*

*Satis Loquentiae, Sapientiae parum. Sall.*

*Minime gentium. Ter.*

*Place. Ubi terrarum sumus? Cic.*

*Ubique terrarum & gentium. Id.*

*Imo abeat quovis gentium. Ter.*

*Fratrem nusquam Invenio gentium. Id.*

*Eo audaciae provectus est. Tac.*

*Ibidem loci res erit. Plaut.*

*Pridie & postridie* govern a Genitive or an Accusative.

*Pridie ejus diei. Postridie ejus diei. Cæs.*

*Pridie, postridie Calendas, Nonas &c. governed of ante.*

## Of the Construction of CONJUNCTIONS.

**C**ONJUNCTIONS connect the same Cases of Nouns and Moods of Verbs. as,

*Pulvis & umbra sumus.* Hor.

*Nec census, nec clarum Nomen avorum, sed probitas magnos Ingeniumque facit.* Ovid.

*Aut prodesse volunt, aut delectare Poetae.* Hor.

*Hec res non minus me male habet quam te.* Ter.

*Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur.* Cic.

**T**HESE Conjunctions most commonly govern a Subjunctive. *ut*, that or tho; *quo*, that; *quasi*, as if; *o si*, o that; *licet*, altho; *ne*, lest; *utinam*, wou'd; *dummodo*, so that; *dum* for *dummodo*; and *quin*, for *quod non*.

*Ut Avaro quid mali optes, nisi ut vivat diu.* P. Syr.

*Ut illum Dii Deæque perdant.* Ter.

*Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.* Ovid.

*Quo. Adjuta me, quo id fiat facilius.* Ter.

*Quasi. Quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur.* Cic.

*O si. O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos.* Virg.

*Licet. Dicam e quidem, licet arma miki mortemque minetur.* Id.

*Ne. Immortalia ne speres, monet annus.* Hor.

Signifying forbidding an Imperative or Subjunctive.

*Ati, ne jura, satis credo.* Plaut.

*Ne post conferas culpam in me.* Ter.

*Utinam. Utinam Liberos nostrorum mores non ipsi perderemus.* Quint.

*Dummodo. Omnia honesta negligunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur.* Cic.

*Dum. Oderint, dum metuant.* Cic.

*Quin. Non dubium est, quin uxorem nolit filius.* Ter.

**T**HESE Conjunctions most commonly govern an Indicative. *Ut*, as, how, after, as soon as; *dum*, *donec*, whilst; *postquam*, *posteaquam*, after; *quasi*, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *perinde*, as; *quoniam*, *quandoquidem*, *quando*, since; *quippe*, for.

*Ut. Ut tute es, item omnes censes esse.* Plaut.

*Ut falsus animi est.* Ter! *Ut valet, ut meminit nostri?* Hor.

*Ut ventum est in Urbem.* Ter. *Ut vidi, ut perii.* Virg.

*Dum. Dum hæc aguntur.* Plaut. *Dum anima est, spes esse dicitur.* Ter. *Priami dum regna manebant.* Virg.

*Donec. Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos.* Ovid.

*Postquam. Is postquam excessit ex Ephebis.* Ter.

*Posteaquam. Posteaquam de medio cursu sumrevocatus.* Cic.

*Quasi. Fuit olim, quasi ego sum, senex.* Plaut.

*Ceu. Adversi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti configunt.* Virg.

Tan-



Tanquam. *Tanquam Philosophorum habent disciplinæ ex ipsis vocabula.* Ter.

Perinde. *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur.* Cic.

Quoniam. *Quoniam non potest id fieri quod vis, id velis quod possit.* Ter.

Quandoquidem. *Quandoquidem in molli confestim herba.* Virg.

Quando. *Quando ego tuum non curo, ne tu cura meum.* Ter.

Quippe. *Quippe vetor fatis.* Virg.

**T**HE other Conjunctions govern sometimes an Indicative, sometimes a Subjunctive. *Cum*, when; *dum*, *donec*, until; *quoad*, whilst, as far as; *antequam*, *priusquam*, before; *simul ac*, *simul atque*, *simul ut*, as soon as; *ubi*, when, after; *ne*, truly; *etsi*, *tametsi*, *quanquam*, *etiamsi*, *quamvis*, altho'; *utpote*, *quippe*, as; *quippe cum*, since; *quod*, *quia*, because; *si*, if; *sin*, if not; *ni*, *nisi*, unless; *siquidem*, if.

*Cum.* *Nunc cum non queo, æquo animo fero.* Ter.  
*Carmina tum melius, cum venerit ipse, canemus.* Virg.

*Dum.* *Ego in arcano opperior, dum ista cognosco.* Cic.

*Ulciscendi vim differant in tempus aliud, dum deserviat ira.* Id.

*Donec.* *Donec geminam partu dabit Ilia prolem.* Virg.

*Haud desinam, donec perfecero hoc.* Ter.

*Quoad.* *Quoad Catalina fuit in urbe, ejus consiliis obstiti.* Cic.

*Quoad possum, a senis latere nunquam decederem.* Id.

*Antequam.* *Antequam de Incommodis Siciliae dico.* Cic.

*Antequam de Republica dicam.* Id.

*Priusquam.* *Omnia ex perini certum est, priusquam perco.* Ter.

*Priusquam aggrediar ad causam.* Cic.

*Simul.* *Simul inflavit Tibicen, a perito carmen cognoscitur.* Id.

*Simul portarum claves tradiderimus.* Liv.

*Simul ac.* *Quam simul ac tali persensi peste teneri.* Virg.

*Simul ac promiseris minerval incipiam.* Varro.

*Simul atque.* *Simul atque introductus est, rem confecit.* Cic.

*Simul atque adoleverit aetas.* Hor.

*Simul ut.* *Omne animal, simul ut ortum est, & seipsum, & omnes partes suas diligit.* Cic.

*Ego ad te habebō quod scribam, simul ut vide-ro Curionem.* Cic.

*Ubi.* *Hac ubi dicta dedit.* Virg.

*Ubi semel quis pejeraverit, ei credi postea non oportet.* Cic.

*Næ.* *Næ ego homo sum infelix.* Ter.

*Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ tuæ consul-isses.* Cic.

*Etsi.* *Etsi vercor, Judices.* Id.

*Nunc tantum videmur intelligere, non diuturnum bellum, etsi id ipsum non nullis videatur secus.* Cic.

*Tametsi.* *Tametsi vicisse debeo, tamen de meo jure decedam.* Id.

Non

*Non mehercle quæ loquor crederem, tamen si vulgo audirem.* Id.

*Quanquam.* *Quanquam gratiarum actionem a te non desiderabam.* Id.

*Cædi vero discentes, quanquam receptum sit, minime velim.* Quint.

*Etiam si.* *Ista veritas, etiamsi jucunda non est, mihi tamen grata est.* Cic.

*Omnia breviter tolerabilia esse debent, etiamsi maxima sint.* Id.

*Quamvis.* *Quamvis, Scæva, satis per te tibi consilis.* Hor.

*Quamvis.* *Elysios miretur Græcia campos.* Virg.  
*Utpote qui.* *Lucius quidem frater ejus, utpote qui peregre depugnavit, familiam ducit.* Cic.

*Aides sacras opulentissimis donis adornavit, utpote qui in Cellam Jovis Capitolini sedecim millia pondo auri contulerit.* Suet.

*Quippe qui.* *Quippe qui cives optimos jugulari jussit.* Cic.

*Cum.* *Ad fidem faciendam justitia plus pollet, quippe cum ea sine prudentia satis habeat auctoritatis.* Id.

*Quod.* *Bene facis quod me adjuvas.* Cic.

*Mihi, quod Nasicam defendi ssem, leviter succensuit.* Id.

*Quia.* *Quia paululum vobis accessit pecuniæ, sublatis animi sunt.* Ter.

*Nemo ipsam voluptatem, quia voluptas sit, aspernatur: Neque quisquam est, qui dolorem ipsum, quia dolor sit, amet.* Cic.

*Si.* *Si illum relinquo, ejus vitæ timeo; sin opitulator, hujus minas.* Ter.

*Si id scissem, nunquam huc tetulissem pedem.*  
Id.

*Sin. Persuadet uti Jugurtham, maxime vivum,  
sin id parum procedat, necatum sibi traderent.*  
Sall.

*Ni. Mirum ni domi est.* Ter.

*Ni noissem Causam, crederem vera hunc loqui.*  
Ter.

*Nisi Pompeius Domitium, nisi me omnia sal-  
lunt, deseret.* Cic.

*Nec veni, nisi fata locum sedemque dedissent.*

Vi g.

*Siquidem. Robur & soboles militum interiit, si-  
quidem, quæ nuntiantur, vera sunt.* Cic.

*O morem præclaram, quem a majoribus acce-  
pimus, siquidem teneremus !* Cic. †

† Obs. All Interrogatives, whether they be Nouns, Pronouns, Alverbs or Conjunctions, put indefinitely, require a Subjunctive; also the Relative Qui has a Subjunctive frequently join'd to it.

After these Verbs volo, nolo, malo, rogo, jubeo, precor, censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est, and the like; also after the Imperatives sine, fac, facito, the Conjunction ut is elegantly omitted as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem. Iac te patrem esse sentiat.* Ter.

Ne after Cave is often omitted as, *Cave facias.* Cic. *Cave te esse trist. m sentiat.* Ter.

---

 Of the Construction of PREPOSITIONS.

**T**HESE following Prepositions govern an Accusative Case.

*Ad, apud, ante, adversus, adversum, cis, citra, circa, circiter, circum, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, præter, propter, secus, secundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus.*

*Haud ullas portabis opes Acherontis ad undas. Propert. apud me, ante suum diem, adversus hostes, adversum omnes copias hostium, cis Euphratem, citra auctoritatem senatus populi-que R. circa se, circiter meridiem, duo circiter millia hominum, urbes circum Capuam, contra inimicos, erga amicos, extra terminos, infra tectum, inter fratres, intra privatos parietes, juxta Macellum, ob questum, penes reges, per agros, pone cervicem, post tergum, præter morem & consuetudinem, propter virtutem, secus viam, secundum Regem, supra cælum, trans montem, ultra Indos, ad occidentem versus.*

These following Prepositions govern an Ablative.

*A, ab, abs, absque, coram, clam, cum, de, e, ex, præ, pro, palam, sine, tenus.*

*Rem cuncta a principio audies. Ter. Nihil est ab omni parte beatum. Hor. Abs tuo conspectu, absque causa, coram senatu, clam patre,*

*cum*



*cum exercitu, de lana caprina, e foro, ex ædibus, præ timore, pro clientibus, palam omnibus, sine labore, mento tenus. ||*

These four *In, sub, super & subter*, govern an Accusative or Ablative; but *subter* more frequently an Ablative.

*In. Cæsar in hiberna exercitum duxit, ipse in citeriorem Galliam profectus est. Cæli. Ego in portu Navigo. Ter.*

*Sub. Et nunc magna mei sub terras ibit Imago. Virg.*

*Trojæ sub mænibus altis tot nati cecidere Dei. Id.*

*Super. Dandum super agmina incidit. Id.*

*Stratoque super discumbitur ostro. Id.*

*Subter. Augusti subter fastigia recti Ingentem Ænean duxit. Id.*

*Omnes ferre libet subter densa testudine casus. Virg.*

*Obs. In, sub, & super, when they signify Motion to a place, govern an Accusative; when they signify Rest an Ablative. When In is put for erga, contra, per, ad, usque, ad, apud, super, It governs an Accusative. as,*

*|| Obs. If the Noun be plural, tenus has most commonly a Genitive.*

*Et crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent. Virg.*

*Lumborum tenus. Cic.*

*Sometimes an Ablative; as, pectoribus tenus. Ovid.*

Amor in patriam *Cic.* Indulgentia in Liberos.  
*Id.* In homines adjunxit Injuriam. Crescit in  
 dies singulos hostium numerus. Siletur in noc-  
 tem. In lucem semper bibit. *Mart.* Pariunt  
 vaccæ in annos decem. *Var.* Studebat in cœnæ  
 tempus. *Plin.* Reges in ipsos Imperium est Jo-  
 vis. *Hor.*

When *In* signifies *inter* it governs an Ab-  
 lative.

*Hoc primum sentio, nisi in bonis, amicitiam  
 esse non posse.*

*Regio erat in primis Italia fertilis. ||*

*Super* for *ultra*, *præter* & *inter*, governs an  
 Accusative.

*Super Indos proferet Imperium. Virg. ultra.  
 Punicum exercitum super morbum etiam fa-  
 mes affecit. Liv præter.*

*Super cœnam, super vinum & Epulas. inter.*

*Super* for *de*, *pro* or *ob*, governs an Ablative.  
*Multa super Priamo rogitans, super Hectore  
 multa. Virg. de.*

*Nec super ipse sua molitur laude laborem. pro.  
 His accensa super. ob hæc. Virg.*

*||* *Sub* when *sub* refers to time, or is put for *circa*,  
*paulo ante* or *paulo post*, it governs an Accusa-  
 tive.

*Sub noctem naves solvit. C. f. i. e. paulo an-  
 te. sub idem tempus. Seldom an Ablative.  
 Sub die ludorum. Sub exitu vitæ.*

**A** Preposition in Composition often governs the same Case as it does out of Composition.  
as,

*Adit oppida Pastor.* Virg.

*Qui per virtutem soliti erant nobilitatem antevenire.* Sall.

*Cæsar omnem equitatum pontem transducit.* Cæsar.

*Biennio continuo pedem porta non extulit.* Suet.  
*Hærent infixi pectore vultus.*

*Victorque viros supereminet omnes.*

Oftentimes the Preposition is repeated. as,

*Qui ad nos intempestive adeunt, molesti sæpe sunt.* Cic.

*Nihil non consideratum exibat ex ore.* Id.

*Nunquam accedo ad te, quin abs te abeam doctior.* Ter. \*

The Prepositions are frequently omitted. as,

*Devenere locos lætos.* ad. Virg.

*Nunc id prodeco.* ob. Ter. *Quid illo facias.* de. Id. *Ut se loco movere non possent.* e or de.

\* Obf. These words are most commonly reckon'd among the Prepositions, prope, ulque, versus, but in reality are Adverbs, and the Accusative is govern'd of ad understood, which is often express'd as,

*Cum prope ad annum octogesimum prospera permanisset fortuna.* Nep. *Ab ovo ulque ad mala.* Hor. *Ad occidentem versus.* Plin.

Tenus and versus are put after their Cases, and sometimes many of the other Prepositions.

Cæsar

Cæs. *Si reipublicæ commodo facere possit.*  
 Cæs. *cum*

## Of the Construction of INTERJECTIONS.

**T**HE Interjections *o*, *heu*, & *proh*, govern a Nominative, Vocative, and sometimes an Accusative. as,

*O vir fortis atque amicus!* Ter. *Heu vanitas humana!* Plin. *Tantum, proh dolor!* degeneramus a parentibus nostris. Liv. *O Dave, itane contemnor abs te?*

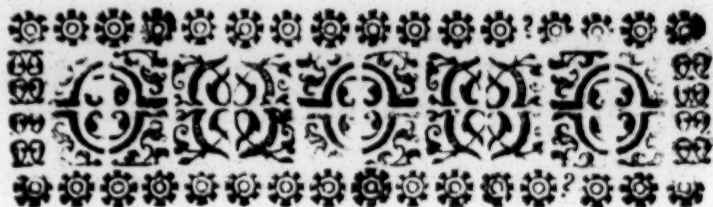
*Heu miserande puer!* Virg. *Proh sancte Jupiter!* Cic. *O præclarum custodem ovium (ut aiunt) Lupum!* Cic. *Heu me infelicem!* Ter. *Proh Deum atque hominum fidem!*

*Hei* and *væ* govern a Dative. as, *Hei misero mihi.* Ter. *Væ tibi, Causidice.* Mart

*Heus* and *obe* only a Vocative: as, *Heus Syre!* Ter. *Obe Libelle!* Mart. *Ab* and *vab* an Accusative or Vocative. *Ab me miserum!* *Ab virgo infelix!* *Vab Inconstantiam!* *Vab jâlus mea, servavisti me.* Plaut.

*Hem* a Dative, Accusative and Vocative. *Hem tibi!* *Hem astutias!* Ter. *Hem mea lux, meum desiderium!* Cic.

Interjections properly govern no Case at all, but the Nominative comes before a Verb, and the Accusative is governed of one understood. as, *Heu vanitas humana!* for, *heu quanta est vanitas humana!* *O fortunatos!* *O quam dicamus fortunatos!* *Proh Deum atque hominum fidem!* for *Imploro fidem Deum.* *Væ tibi!* *Magnum malum sit tibi!*



## Of Figurative GRAMMAR.

**A** Figure is the Change of a word or Sentence from its common Form.

The Figures of Grammar may be reduced to these three, *Metaplasmus*, *Enallage*, and *Ellipsis*.

*Metaplasmus* is the Transformation of a word from the common form of *Orthography*; which may be done these ten ways: The four first of which add to a word; the four next take from it; and the two last change it.

1. *Prosthesis* is the prefixing a Letter or Syllable to the beginning of a word: as *gnatus* for *natus*; *tetuli* for *tuli*.

2. *Epenthesis* is the Interposition of a Letter or Syllable in the middle of a word: as, *Religio* for *Religio*; *Induperator* for *Imperator*.

3. *Paragoge* is the adding of a Letter or Syllable to the End of a word: as, *med* for *me*; *dicer* for *dici*.

4. *Dieresis* is the dividing of one Syllable  
into



into two : as, *aulai* for *aulæ* ; *dissoluisse* for *dissolvisse*.

5. *Aphæresis* is the taking away of a Letter or Syllable from the Beginning of a word : as, *tenderant* for *tetenderant*.

6. *Syncope* is the taking away of a Letter or Syllable from the middle of a word : as, *periculum*, *vinculum*, *seclum*, for *periculum*, *vinculum*, *seculum* ; *Deum* for *Deorum* ; *dixti* for *dixisti* ; *amasti* for *amavisti* ; *amarunt* for *amaverunt*.

7. *Apocope* is the taking away of a Letter or Syllable from the end of a word : as, *Ingeni*, *peculi*, for *Ingenii*, *peculii* ; *men'*, for *mene*.

8. *Crasis* or *Synæresis* is the Contracting of two Syllables into one : as, *Theſei* for *Theſei* ; *Achillei* for *Achillei* ; *prendo* for *prehendo*.

9. *Metathesis* is the Transposition of a Letter or Syllable : as, *Lybia* for *Libya* ; *ἐπαδον* for *ἐπαρρον*.

10. *Antithesis* is the putting of one Letter for another : as, *optumus* for *optimus* ; *olli* for *illi*.

To these may be added *Imesis*, which is the Interposition of one word in the middle of another : as *septem subjecta trioni* : for *septentrioni*. *Per mihi, inquam, gratum feceris* ; for *pergratum*. Cic.

**E** *Nallage* is the Interchanging of one word for another.

A Substantive for an Adjective : as, *nemo homo* ; *Exercitus victor*, for *victoriosus* ; *Scelus* for *sceleratus*.

An Adjective for a Substantive : as, *pauper* for *pauper homo*.

A Substantive for a Participle : as, *populum late regem*, for *regnantem*.

A Participle for a Substantive : as, *amans* for *Amator* ; *medentes* for *medici* ; *volantes* for *aves*.

A Noun Adjective for an Adverb : as, *illi haud timidi resistunt*, for *haud timide*. *Horrendum clamat*. *Multa gemens*.

An Adverb for a Noun : as, *aliud cras*, for *alius dies crastinus*. *Ego hunc esse aliter credidi* ; for *alium*. Ter.

A Noun for a Verb : as, *tua Indicatio est* ; for *tuum est indicare* Plaut. *Utrum e republica sit necne, vestra existimatio est* ; for *vestrum est existimare*. Liv.

A Verb for a Noun : as, *velle suum cuique est*.

An Adverb for a Preposition : as *proxime muros*.

A Preposition for an Adverb : as, *coram, quem quaeritis, adsum*.

An abstract Substantive for a Concrete : as, *Conjugium* for *Conjux* ; *Matrimonia* for *uxores* ; *Servitia* for *servi* ; *Amicitiae* for *amici* ; *Nobilitas* for *nobiles* ; *Juventus* for *juvenes*.

A proper Noun for a Common : as, *sint Mecenates, non deerunt, Flacce, Marones* ; for *sint munifici Patroni, non deerunt boni poetae*.

A Common Noun for a proper : as *Urbs* for *Roma* ; *orator* for *Cicero*.

One Gender for another : as, *Ego quoque pereo, quod mihi est carius* ; for *qui mihi sum carior*.

One Number for another ; Singular for a Plural : as, *Romanus, Gallus*, for *Romani, Galli* ; *Hostis, miles, eques, pedes* ; for *Hostes, milites, equites, pedites*.  
Plu-

Plural for Singular : as, *colla, corda, ora, pectora* ; for *collum, os, cor, pectus*. Especially among the Poets.

**E**llipsis is the elegant omission of one word or more in a Sentence, contrary to the common form of Syntax. as, *ubi ad Dianæ veneris* ; for *templum Dianæ*. In like manner we say in English, when you come to St. *Paul's*, St. *Mary's* ; for St. *Paul's*, St. *Mary's* Church. *Hectoris Andromache. Uxor.*

To this one Figure *Ellipsis* may be reduced these eight following.

1. *Appositio*, which is the putting of two Substantives in the same Case. as, *Urbs Roma* ; i. e. *Urbs, quæ est Roma. Flumen Rhenus* ; *Flumen, quod est Rhenus. Annibal peto pacem. Ego, qui sum Annibal.*

2. *Syllepsis* is when an Adjective or a Verb added to different Substantives or Nominative Cases agrees with the most worthy. as, *Pater mihi & Mater mortui. Rex & Regina sunt beati. Dux hostium cum urbe Valentia & exercitu deleti.* Sall. *Ut operam, consilium, rem, fidem meam, sibi ad omnes res parata putent.* Cic. *Prolexæus & Cleopatra Reges Ægypti.* i. e. *Rex & Regina. Ego & Cicero valemus : nos duo valemus. Tu & Iulia valetis : Vos duo valetis. Dum fata, Deusque sinebant, vixi.* Virg.

3. *Prolepsis* is when the parts are put after the whole in different Numbers or Persons, without repeating the Verb or Adjective. as, *Duc Aquilæ volaverunt, hæc ab oriente, Illa ab occidente*

dente. i. e. *Due Aquilæ volaverunt, hæc volavit ab oriente, Illa volavit ab occidente.* Exercitus hostium duo, alter ab urbe, alter a Gallia, obstant. i. e. *Alter obstat ab urbe, alter obstat a Gallia.* Ego vapulando, Ille verberando, usque ambo defessi sumus. i. e. *Nos ambo defessi sumus, ego vapulando defessus sum, Ille verberando defessus est.* Boni quoniam convenimus ambo, tu calamos inflare leves, ego dicere versus. i. e. *Ego conveni, bonus inflare calamos ; tu convenisti, bonus dicere versus.*

4. *Zeugma* is when an Adjective or Verb added to different Substantives agrees with the nearest only. And it is either in Gender, Number or Person.

1. Gender : *Et Genus & virtus, nisi cum re, vilior alga est.* Hor. *Utinam aut hic surdus, aut hæc muta facta sit.* Ter. i. e. *Aut hic surdus factus sit.* Locus, tempus constitutum. i. e. *Locus constitutus.*

2. Number : *Huc ades, o Melibæe, Caper tibi saluus & hædi.* i. e. *Salvi.* Hic illius arma, hic currus fuit. i. e. *Arma fuerunt. Tutatur favor Euryalum, lachrymæque decore.* i. e. *tutantur.* Nihil hic, nisi carmina desunt. i. e. *Nihil deest.*

3. Person. *Pene ille timore, ego risu corruui.* i. e. *Ille corruit.* Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candidus esses. i. e. *Ille niger esset.* Clinia servulum misit, & ego una nostrum Syrum. i. e. *Misit.* Talem si ium, nisi tu, pareret nemo ; i. e. *Nisi tu pareres.*

5. *Synthesis* or *Synesis* is when the Adjective does

does not agree with the substantive express'd, but with one understood. as, *Ubi est scelus, qui me perdidit?* Ter for *scelustus*. *Capita conjurationis virgis cæsi*. Liv for *principes*. *Turba ruunt*. *Pars epulis onerant mensas*. Virg. *Collectives*. *Duo millia Samnitium cæsi* i. e. *Qui Samnites cæsi*. *Pars in crucem acti*, *pars bestiis objecti* Sall i. e. *Pars hominum, qui homines acti*. *Daret ut Catenis fatale monstrum, quæ generosus perire querens*. Hor *Quæ Cleopatra*. *Centauro in magna*, i. e. *Navi*.

6. *Antiptosis* is the putting of one Case for another. as, *Uxor Inviæti Jovis esse nescis*. for *te esse uxorem* Hor. *Adsis Latitiæ Bacchus Dator*. for *Bacche*. Virg. *Canum degeneres*, *Expediti militum*, for *canes, milites*. *C i nu c cognomen Iulo*, for *Iulus*. Virg. *Cui De tra ignibus armata est* for *cujus* Ovid *Urbem quam statuo vestra est*. for *urbs quam urbem*. Virg. *Iam ut vivat optant*. for *ut ille vivat*. *Rem vides, quomodo se habeat*, for *res se habeat*.

7. *Synecdoche* is when the Ablative signifying the part is changed into the Accusative with the Greek Preposition *κατα*, or the Latin *secundum* or *quoad* understood. as, *Æthiops albus dentes*, for *dentibus*, or *quoad dentes*. *Miles membra fractus labore*. *Quod ad membra*. *Omnia Mercuria similis* *Secundum omnia*. *Flores inscripti nomina Regum*. *Quod ad nomina*. *Expleri mentem nequit*. *Quod ad mentem*.

8. *Helenismus* is an Imitation of the Greeks beyond the Rules of Latin as, *Omnium rerum Mors est extrema*. *Discrucior animi*. *Præstans ani-*



*animi. Abstine irarum. Desine querelarum. Solus tibi certet Amyntas. Ego te faciam, ut miser sis. Fruges consumere nati. for ad consumendas fruges. Amor cognoscere. for cognoscendi.*

*Torpedo octogenis fatus habens invenitur. Plin. for habere Acerba tuens. Obl. Antiptosis and Synecdoche are Grecisms.*

To these may be added.

1. *Pleonasmus*, which is the abounding of one word or more in a Sentence. as, *Hiscæ oculis ego met vidi Memoria memini. Nusquam gentium. Vivere vitam. Servire servitutem. Magis beator. Multa concurrunt simul. Præsentit prius. Itaque ergo amantur. Nisi si. Etsi quamvis non fueris suasor.*

2. *Archaismus* is when a word is used as it was anciently, when the Roman Language was in its Infancy. as, *Aulai for aulæ; sanguen for sanguis; olli for illi; Duint for Dent; scibo for sciam; siem for sim; moriri for mori; here, quæse, donicum, for heri, quasi, donec. Quidve hinc abitio? Absente nobis. Præsentē testibus.*

3. *Barbarismus* is the using of an Improper or barbarous word for a proper or Classical one. as, *Riderus for eques; perla for unio, Crostium for Agellus; stavi for steti; legebo for legam.*

4. *Solæcismus* is an Error in Syntax. as, *acuta gladius; Da me Librum. for acutus gladius; Da mihi Librum.*



## OF PROSODY.

**P**ROSODY is that part of Grammar, which teacheth the true Accents and Quantity of Syllables, with the Art of Scanning and making Verses.

The Quantity of every Syllable is either Long, as ne, in monere. Short, as be, in Scribere, or Common as pa, in Patres, lu, in Volucris.

A long Syllable is marked thus ( ¯ ) a short Syllable thus ( ˘ ) The three Accents, acute ( ´ ) grave ( ` ) and circumflex ( ^ ) are not used in Latin as they are in Greek: Unless the acute sometimes to clear an Ambiguity; as cecidit He fell; cecidit, he hath beaten; the grave to distinguish Adverbs, as stultè, unà, teriò: the circumflex to distinguish the Ablative of the first Declension, Genitive of the fourth, and contracted words; as Mulà, Manùs, Amàsti.

## Rules for the Quantity of first Syllables.

1. Rule. A Vowel coming before a double Consonant, j, or two Consonants, in the same or diffe-

rent

rent words is long by Position ; every contracted Syllable or Diphthong is long ; and the first Syllable of every perfect Tense and Supine of but two Syllables. as, Axis, gāza, mīor, cōrpus, ; bōbus, cōgo, aūrā, vīdi, vītum.

Except. A short Vowel before a Mute and a Liquid in the same Syllable is common ; as, agris Cyclopes ; pharetra, Volucris.

Et primo similis volūcri, mox vera volūcris. Ovid The Mute Consonants are b, c, d, e, f, g, p, t ; the Liquids in Latin l & r. But Matris is long because Mater is long.

Præ before a Vowel is commonly short: as præeo, præultus. And also the first Syllable of these Dissyllables is short. bibi, dedi, fidi, scidi, steti, tūli ; litum, situm, itum, ratum, statum, datum, statum.

2. Rule. A Vowel before another Vowel in Latin Words is short ; as, Deus, omnia. So also, mihi, nihil ; because h is reckoned no Letter. Likewise the doubled Syllable of the perfect Tense is short, as tetigi pependi, peperi.

Except fi in fio which is always long, unless e & r both follow ; as fibam, fiam, long ; but fieri, fierem, short.

2. The Genitive and Dative of the first Declension has the Penultima long, when e is between two i's, as diei, faciei

3. The Genitives singular in ius are long in prose, but common in Verse ; as, illius, unius.

But alius is always long, alterius always short.

4. One has the first Syllable common.

5. Pompei, Cai, and such Vocatives have the Penultima long.

6. Di in Diana is common.

7. Aer, dius & eheu are long; as al'o aulāi, terrāi, and such old Genitives of the first Declension.

8. A Vowel before another in Greek Words is often long; as, Pierides, Lycāon Cytherea, and sometimes short, as in Danaë, fimois, Hyādes; so that no certain Rule can be given about them.

3. Rule. The Quantity of compound and Derivative Words is commonly the same, as in simple and primitive Words. as, perlego, relego are short, because lēgo is short; perlegi relegi, long, because legi is long. Improbus short, because probus is short. The first Syllable is short in amicus, pavidus, avitus; because it is short in amo paveo, avus, long in maternus, nātivus. finitimus; because it is long in mater, nātus, finis. And because the Prepositions, a, de, di, e, prae, pro, se, are long; and ab, ad, in, ob, per, re, &c. are short; they are likewise so in the Compounds, a-vertō, detraho, &c. adhibeo, obeo, &c.

Except. Some few Derivatives differ from the Primitives. as, Lex, legis, from lego, legis: Mōbilis, from moveo &c. Dux, dūcis, from dūco, dūcis; lūce:na from lūceo.

Some Compounds differ from their Simples; as pejēro dejēro, from jūro fatidicus, Caufidicus, from dīco; pronūbus, from nūbo.

Re in refert is long. Di is short in dīsertus, dīrimo, Pro for ante is short, as, propheta prologus: In many Latin Words it is short, as, procella, profundus, profugio, profugus, prōnepos,

pos, prōneptis, prōfētus, prōtari, prōfiteor, prō-  
tanus, prōfēto, prōfētus, prōtervus : *In some it*  
*is common as* propino, propago, *a verb*, prouun-  
do, propello, propulso, procuro, proterpina.

### Of middle SYLLABLES.

**R**ULE. *If a word has more than two Syl-*  
*lables, the Quantity of the last Syllable*  
*but one may be known by the sound; as, Honōinis,*  
*sanguinis, virtūis, pietatis : Corporis, Honōris.*

*Some few middle Syllables are known by Ana-*  
*logy; as* amāre, docēre, legere, audire, mularum,  
annōrum, facierum, honoribus, arcibus : *Acciui,*  
*auditum, credīdi, creditum. Alō participles in*  
*rus, have always the penultima long, as, amatū-*  
*rus, habitūrus, lectūrus.*

*In Verbs a & e before bam and bo are long; as,*  
*amāham, amābo, legebam, docebo; e is short be-*  
*fore ram, rim, ro, as* amaveram, amaverim, a-  
mavero. *e is long in erunt and ere, in the perfect*  
*Tense : Long in the future Tense passive of the 3d*  
*& 4th Conjugations; as, legeris or legere audieris,*  
*audiere. beris and bere always short; as, ama-*  
*beris docebere : rimus, ritis, Short in the perfect*  
*of the Subjunctive; rimus, ritis, long in the future;*  
*as, amaverimus, amaveritis, legerimus, legeritis.*

*The Poets sometimes make e short in the pe-*  
*nultima of the perfect as,*

Obstupui steteruntque comæ. *Virg.* Dii tibi di-  
vitiis dederunt.

*Dare with its compounds have a short.*

*Adjectives in inus are long, as, Clandestinus,*  
*matutinus, repentinus; except these* Diutinus, cras-  
tinus,



tinus, pristinus perendinus, and materials, as, faginus, cedrinus; cristallinus, adamantinus. \*

Of last SYLLABLES.

**A** in Nouns declined with Cases is short; as, Musa, templa, lampada.

1. Except. The Ablative of the first is long; as, Musā, Aeneā.

2. The Vocative of Greek Nouns; as, Aeneā, Palla.

3. A in words and Verbs undeclined is long; as, amā, frustra, erga, intra But itā, quia, eja, are short Contra & ultra & numerals in ginta, are sometimes short, but oftener long.

E at the end is short; as, natē, patrē, currē, antē.

1. Except, all Nouns of the first and fifth Declension; as, Anchise, Daphne, fide; re and die, and the Adverbs compounded of them; as, quare, hodie, pridie, postridie, quotidie

2. The 2d Person Singular of the Imperative of the 2d Conjugation; as, doce, monē.

3. These Monosyllables are long, me, te, se; que, ne, ve, short

4. Adverbs derived from Adjectives are long; as, pulchrē, doctē, doctissimē, fortissimē; but, benē, malē, supernē, infernē, are short.

---

\* Obs. The Quantities of preceeding and middle Syllables, which fall not under the foregoing Rules, must be learned from the Authority of the Poets, from which all Rules are formed.

*These are long, fermè, ferè & ohè.*

*I at the End is long ; as, Domini, patri, amavi, doceri, heri.*

*Except. Greek Vocatives are short ; as, Alexi, Amarylli.*

*Datives common Mihi, tibi, sibi ; ubi, ibi, cui, nisi, quasi, are common ; sicuti, necubi, & sicubi, always short.*

*O at the End is common ; as leo, virgo, amo, docendo, quando.*

*Except. Monosyllables are long ; ô, dô, stô, prô. Also Greek feminines in o ; as Didô, Sapphô, and Apollô. Datives and Ablatives of the 2d Declension, as, Dominô, Leô : Adverbs derived from Adjectives ; as, primô, meritô, &c.*

*But the e Adverbs, denuô, fieriô, mutuô, postremô, verô, are oftener long, but sometimes short. Modo, with it. Compounds quomodo, dummodo, postmodo, is short.*

*Ambo, duo, icio, nescio, illicô, imo, cedo, ego, homo, & citô, are most commonly short.*

*U at the end is always long, as, vultû, cornû, dictû, diû, Panthû.*

*Y is always short ; as, Moly, Tophy*

*B, D, T, L, R, are short : as, ab, ob, iûb, : âd, quid, sed, : Caput, amat, et : Tribunal, fel, vigil, pol, Coniul : Calcar, Hamilear, imber, vir, cor, Hector, turtul, Martyr, precor, mittier, temper, prater.*

*Except in L, sol, sal, ril.*

*In R, Greek Nouns in, ne and others that make eris long ; also tar, lar, nar, cur, tur, & par, with its compounds.*

## PROSODY

217

*C and N are long; as, ac, fīc, illū: Splen, quā, nōn, Dāmōn. Except in C, nec, donec; and the pronoun hīc, and the Verb faci*

*In N; Nouns in en, that make inis short in the Genitive. as, carmēn, crimēn, numēn: And also Greek Nouns in on, with omicron. as, Ilion, Pylon: And these particular Words, an, in, forsitan, forsitan, tamēn, attamēn, viden', men', nōtīn'. for mene, nostine.*

*M was formerly short, and not cut off, as it is now. as, Insignita terē tum millia militum octo. Ennius.*

*As, Es, Os, are long. as, Mās, Thomās, pietās, gigas, mentas, amās, legās, foras: Alcides, Circes, quies, tērmōnes, res, ames, doces, leges, audies, octies: Flōs, nēpōs, honōs, herōs, virōs, bonōs, nōs.*

*Except in as, adis, Vās, lampās, arcās, and also anās, anatis; Also the Greek Accusatives of the 3d Declension: Craterās, Cyclopās Heroās, Troās.*

*Except in Es. The Nominative and Vocative of Greek plurals. as, Amazonēs, Arcadēs, Delphinēs, Naiadēs, Gryphēs, Phrygēs, &c. Es of sum, with its Compounds, abēs, adēs, potēs, and the Preposition penēs. Greek Neuters in Es; as, Cacoethēs, Hippomanēs, &c. Nouns in Es of the 3d, whose Penultima in the Genitive is short; as, milēs, segēs, obīēs. Except of these, Ceres, paries, aries, and pes, with its Compounds.*

*Except in Os. Compos, impōs, os, offis, and Greek Words in omicron, as, Delos, Chaos, Palladōs, Phillidōs.*

Q

I

is & Us are short. as, Turrīs, Jovīs, adspiciēs, crediēs, magīs, cīs: Annūs, tempūs, vetūs, impetūs, fontibūs, dicimūs, intūs, tenūs.

*Except in Is, all the Cases plural; as, pennīs, armīs, omnis, urbis* Nominatives Singular when the Genitive ends in itis, inis, entis. as, Samnīs, itis, Salanīs, inis, Simois, entis. All Monosyllables, as, līs, vīs, glīs; and the Adverbs gratis & fortis To which add the 2d Persons Singular and Plural of the fourth Conjugation; as, audīs, nescīs, auditis nescitis. Ris, in the Subjunctive is common.

*Except in Us long* All Monosyllables, as, grūs, fūs, thūs, mūs Genitives of the 3d Declension; as, Cliūs, Sapphūs: Genitives Singular of the 4th, and Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, plural. as, fructūs, manūs Also Nouns that make in the Genitive, uris, udis, utis, with the penultima long; and also untis & odis; as Tel-lūs, Incūs, virtūs, amathūs, Tripūs In short, those that make the Vocative in u, as, Panthūs, panthū; Jesūs, Jesū.

Ys is short: as, Capys, Chelys, Chlamys.

Tethys is sometimes long: and those that have the Nominative in yn as well as ys: as, Gortys, Phorcys, Tracys.

The last Syllable of every Verse is long or short, as the nature of the Verse requires. As in this Hexameter.

Nos patriæ fines, et dulcia linquimus arvā.

Va is made long, the Foot being a Spondee.

And in this Sapphic of Horace.

Crescit occulto velut arbor arvō.

Vo is made short, the Foot being a Trochee.

Of



## Of making and Scanning V E R S E S.

**A** *VERSE is a Sentence measured by, and confined to, a certain Number of Feet : Syllables make Feet, and Feet make Verses. Some Feet consist of two Syllables, some of three.*

*The Feet most commonly used are,*

Spondee.	} as }	— —	Virtus. 2 long.
Pyrrichy.		∪ ∪	Deus 2 short.
Trochee.		— ∪	Panis 1 long, 1 short.
Iambus		∪ —	Amans. 1 short, 1 long.
Dactyl.		— ∪ ∪	Scribere. 1 long, 2 short.
Anapæst.	} }	∪ ∪ —	Pietas. 2 short, 1 long.

*The most usual Kinds of Verses, of which I shall take Notice, are, Hexameter, Pentameter, Adonic, Alclepiad, Sapphic, Phaleucian, Glyconian, Pherecratian, Iambic & Horatian.*

1. *An Hexameter Verse consists of six Feet ; the first four of which may be Dactyls or Spondees ; but the fifth Foot must be a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee. as,*

Tītyrē | ū pātū | læ rēcū | hāns fūb | tegmīnē | fagī |  
 In novā | fert añī | mūs mū | tātis | dicērē | fōrmast

*The measuring the Feet of a Verse in this manner is called Scanning \**



**Obs.** When a Spondee is in the fifth place, which seldom happens, 'tis called a Spondaic Verse. as,

Charā Dēum sōboles, māgnūm Jōvīs Incrēmentūm.

2. A Pentameter consists of five Feet; the two first either Dactyls or Spondees, with a long Syllable at the end of a Word, in the first part; and two Feet, both Dactyls, with a long Syllable in the latter part. as,

Res est | sōlīcī | tī | plenā tī | mōrīs ā | mōr |

3. An Adonic consists of two Feet, a Dactyl and a Spondee. as,

Terrūit ūrbēm.

Dūlcē loquentem.

4. An Asclepiad consists of a Spondee, a Dactyl, a long Syllable and two Dactyls at last. as,

Mæ ce | nas ātā | vīs | editē | regībūs |

5. A Sapphic consists of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees at last: After 3 of which Verses is generally put an Adonic. as,

Intē | ger vī | tæ scēlē | iīsquē | pūrūs |

Nōn ēget Maūrīs jācūlis nec arcū,

Nec venenātīs grāvīdā īāgītīs,

Fūlcē, phāretra.

6. A Phaleucian Verse consists of eleven Syllables in this order, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and 3 Trochees at last. as,

Quōd ī īs | est ē vē | līs nī | hīlquē | mālīs |

Sūmmam | nec mētū | ās dī | em nec | ōptes |

Mart.

7. A Glyconian consists of 3 Feet, a Spondee and 2 Dactyls.

Mens rēg | nūm bonā | pōssīdēt | Sen.

8. A Pherecratian also consists of 3 Feet, a Spondee, a Daetyl and a Spondee. as,

Nigris | æquora | ventis | Hor.

9. An Iambic Verse is either Dimeter, of four Feet, or Trimeter, of six; and is pure or mixt.

A pure Iambic consists only of Iambus's. as,

Dim. Inar | it æ | stū ō | iūs |

Trim. Sūs | et ip | ia Rō | ma vi | ribus |  
rūt | Hor.

A mixt Iambic in the odd places (that is in the 1st, 3d, 5th,) frequently admits a Spondee, or some Foot equal to it: But in the even places, (2d & 4th) only an Iambus, or some Foot equal to it. as,

Dim. Fōrti | seque | mūr pēc | tōre | Hor.

Trim. Pārs ia | nī ta | tis vel | lē fa | nārī |  
fūt Sen.

10. An Horatian Verse (so called from Horace, because he seems to have been much pleased with it) is compounded of four Verses; the two former of which consist of a Spondee or an Iambus, (but oftener a Spondee) an Iambus and a long Syllable, and two Daetyls at last: The third Verse consists of four Feet and a half; the first and third a Spondee and sometimes an Iambus; the second and fourth only Iambus's with a Syllable at the end: The fourth Verse consists of four Feet, the 1st and 2d Daetyls, the 3d and 4th Trochees. as,

Virtūs | repul | fæ | nesciā | fōrdidæ |

Inta | mina | tis | tūlgēt hō | nōribūs |

Nec fū | mī a ūc | pōnīt | fēcū | res |

Arbitri | ō popū | lāris | aūræ |

Obf.

Obs. 1. For Asclepiad Verses see Hor. Lib. 1. od. 1. Lib. 3d. od. 30. Lib. 4. od. 8. &c. For Saph. Lib. 1. od. 2. 10. 12. 20. 22. 25. 3. 33.

2. For Phaleucian see Mart. Lib. Ep. 2. 8. 18. 28. 35. 42. 53. &c. & Catullus in Carm. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. &c.

Pasīer | delīcī | æ mē | æ pū | ellæ | 2, Carm.

3. For Asclepiad, Pherecratian and Glyconian, see Hor. Lib. 1. od. 5. 14. 21. 23. &c. The two first Verses being Asclepiad, the 3d Pherecratian, the 4th Glyconian.

4. For pure Iambics see Hor. 16. Epod. for Trimeter and Dimeter, his first 10 Epodes for Trimeter the Prologues and first Scenes of Sen: Tragedies, and all Phædrus's Fables.

5. For Horatian see Hor. Lib. 1. od. 9. 16. 17. 26. 27. 29. 31. 34. 35. &c.

**T**HE Poets took a Liberty in differing from the common Rules of Quantity; so that in Scanning Verses these seven Figures are to be taken Notice of, Synalæpha, Echthipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, Systole, Diastole & Cæsure.

1 By Synalæpha, a Vowel or Diphthong at the End of a word is cut off, if the next word begins with a Vowel, Diphthong, or the Letter *h* as.

Terra antiqua potens armis atque ubere glebæ.  
Dardanidæ intensi pœnas cum sanguine possunt.  
Quidve moror, si omnes uno ordine habetis  
Achivos.

Which Verses are Scann'd after this manner.

'Terr' antiqua potens armis atqu' ubere glebæ.  
Dardanid' intensi pœnas cum sanguine possunt.  
Quid

Quidve moror 1' omnes un ordin' habetis Achivos ?

Synalæpha is sometimes dispensed with. as,  
O pater, o hominum, Divumque æterna potestas.  
Et succus pecori, & lac subducitur agnis.

Credimus, an qui amant ipsi sibi somnia fingunt ?

2 By Ecthipsis The Letter m with the preceding Vowel is cut off, the next word beginning with a Vowel. as,

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.

O curas hominum, o quantum est in rebus inane!

Thus. Monstr' horrend,' inform,' ingens cui lumen ademptum

O Curas homin,' o quant est in rebus inane!

Antiently the Letter s was sometimes cut off by this figure.

Vicimus, o socii, & magnam pugnâvimu' pugnam. Enn.

Both Synalæpha and Ecthipsis are found also in the last Syllable of a Verse, the next beginning with a Vowel. as

Sternitur infelix, alieno vulnere, cælumque

Adspicit, & dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. Virg.

Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum.

Ardua cernebant Juvenes, murosque subibant Il.

3 By Synæresis two Syllables of the same word are contracted into one, in such words as these, Dii, cui, huic, iidem, deinde, deinceps, semianimis, semihomo, semiustus, deero ; & the like. as,

Corpora, Di cæptis — Filius huic contra —

Seu

Seu lento fuerint alvãria vimine texta. *for alvearia.*

4. *By Diæsis or Diallysis, one Syllable is divided into two.*

1. *A Diphthong, as Orphæus, Perseus, Troïa, aulai for aula.*

2. *The Consonants j and v are resolved into Vowels, as in subiecta, filuæ, soluit; for subiecta, silvæ, solvit as,*

*Si qua ferventi subiecta Cancro est. Sapp. Sen. Aurarum & filuæ metu. Glycon. Hor.*

*Quod zonam soluit diu ligatam. Phalu. Catul.*

3. *u after q or g is expressed; as aquæ, relanguit, reliquis.*

*Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. Lucret.*

*Imposito fratri moribunda relanguit ore. Ovid.*

*Reliquas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. Lucret.*

5. *By Systole a long Syllable is made short. as, Obstupui, steteruntque. Dii tibi divitias dederunt*

6. *By Diastole a short Syllable is made long. as,*

*Atque hic Priamiden laniatum corpore toto. Virg.*

*Et Domus intactæ te tremit Arabiæ. Propert.*

7. *By Cæsura a short Syllable, cut off from a word after a Foot is compleated, is made long. as,*

*Omnia vincit amor, & nos cedamus amori. Virg.*



